

# A Morse lemma for quasigeodesics in symmetric spaces and euclidean buildings

MICHAEL KAPOVICH  
BERNHARD LEEB  
JOAN PORTI

We prove a Morse lemma for regular quasigeodesics in nonpositively curved symmetric spaces and euclidean buildings. We apply it to give a new coarse geometric characterization of Anosov subgroups of the isometry groups of such spaces simply as undistorted subgroups which are uniformly regular.

53C35; 20F65, 51E24

## 1 Introduction

One of the important features of  $\delta$ -hyperbolic geodesic metric spaces is the *Morse lemma*, also known as the *stability of quasigeodesics*: every (uniform) quasigeodesic is (uniformly) close to a geodesic. This property of hyperbolic spaces is used, among other things, to show that hyperbolicity is a quasiisometry invariant and that quasiisometries between hyperbolic spaces extend to the ideal boundaries. Stability of quasigeodesics is known to fail in CAT(0) metric spaces: already the euclidean plane contains quasigeodesics which are not Hausdorff-close to any geodesic. Some versions of the Morse lemma are known for CAT(0) spaces: In the case of maximal quasiflats, see Lang and Schroeder [14], and in the case of *Morse quasigeodesics* (also known as *hyperbolic* or *rank one* quasigeodesics), see Sultan [15]. Nevertheless, the real understanding of what should constitute a true analogue of the Morse lemma in the CAT(0) setting remains elusive.

The main goal of this paper is to prove an analogue of the Morse lemma for *regular* quasigeodesics in nonpositively curved symmetric spaces and euclidean buildings. In order to unify the terminology, we refer to nonpositively curved symmetric spaces and euclidean buildings as *model spaces* throughout the paper.

Instead of concluding that regular quasigeodesics are uniformly close to geodesics (which is far from true; see Section 5.4), we will prove that they are contained in

uniform neighborhoods of certain convex subsets of the model space: *diamonds* in the case of finite quasigeodesics, *Weyl cones* in the case of quasigeodesic rays and *parallel sets* (more precisely, unions of opposite Weyl cones therein) in the case of complete quasigeodesics.

Note that the question about regular quasigeodesics reduces to the case of model spaces without flat factors. For, if a model space has a nontrivial flat de Rham factor, then all diamonds and Weyl cones split off this flat factor, and the canonical projection to the complementary (model space) factor preserves  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity of segments and paths. We therefore restrict our discussion to model spaces without flat factors.

Our main motivation for these results comes from the theory of discrete isometric group actions on model spaces  $X$ , more specifically, the desire to give a clean coarse-geometric characterization of *Morse actions*, which have been introduced in Kapovich, Leeb and Porti [10].

The notion of *regularity* we use in this paper is defined relative to a certain face  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  of the model chamber  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  of the Tits boundary of  $X$ . The definition is the easiest in the case when  $\tau_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  and we first present our results in this setting.

A quasigeodesic  $q$  in  $X$  (which might be finite or infinite) is (*coarsely*) *uniformly regular* if any two points  $x$  and  $y$  in  $q$  which are sufficiently far apart ( $d(x, y) \geq D$ ), define a *uniformly regular segment*  $xy$  in  $X$ , ie a geodesic segment whose direction belongs to a fixed compact subset  $\Theta$  of the interior of  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . A *diamond*  $\diamond(x, y)$  in  $X$  is a generalization of a geodesic segment. In the case when the segment  $xy$  is regular,  $\diamond(x, y)$  is a (convex) subset of a flat  $F \subset X$  containing  $xy$ , namely the intersection of two Weyl chambers  $V(x, \sigma) \cap V(y, \hat{\sigma})$  with the tips at  $x$  and  $y$ , respectively, over opposite chambers  $\sigma$  and  $\hat{\sigma}$  in the Tits boundary  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  of  $X$ .

**Theorem 1.1** (Morse lemma, regular case) (i) *Every finite uniformly regular quasigeodesic path  $q$  in  $X$  with endpoints  $x$  and  $y$  of distance  $d(x, y) \geq D$  is contained in a neighborhood of the diamond  $\diamond(x, y)$ .*

(ii) *Every uniformly regular quasigeodesic ray  $q$  in  $X$  with initial point  $x$  is contained in a neighborhood of a unique euclidean Weyl chamber  $V = V(x, \sigma)$ .*

(iii) *Every uniformly regular complete quasigeodesic  $q$  in  $X$  is contained in a neighborhood of a unique maximal flat  $F$  and, moreover, is contained in a neighborhood of the union  $V(z, \sigma) \cup V(z, \hat{\sigma}) \subset F$  of two opposite euclidean Weyl chambers with common tip  $z \in F$ .*

Furthermore, the distance from  $q$  to  $\diamond(x, y)$ ,  $V$  or  $V(z, \sigma) \cup V(z, \hat{\sigma})$  is bounded above in terms of the quasiisometry constants of  $q$ , the coarseness scale  $D$  and the regularity set  $\Theta$ . In case (iii), the common tip  $z$  can be chosen uniformly close to any point on  $q$ .

In other words, each uniformly regular quasigeodesic in  $X$  is a Morse quasigeodesic in the sense of [10].

We deduce from this result that (coarsely) uniformly regularly quasiisometrically embedded subspaces in model spaces  $X$  must be Gromov-hyperbolic. A quasiisometric embedding  $f$  from a geodesic metric space  $Y$  into  $X$  is (coarsely) uniformly regular if the images of geodesic segments in  $Y$  are (coarsely) uniformly regular in  $X$ . (Uniformity here refers to the constant  $D$  and the subset  $\Theta$ .)

**Theorem 1.2** (hyperbolicity of domain and boundary map, regular case) *If  $f: Y \rightarrow X$  is a (coarsely) uniformly regular quasiisometric embedding, then the space  $Y$  is Gromov-hyperbolic and, if it is also locally compact, the map  $f$  extends to a topological embedding from the Gromov boundary of  $Y$  into the Furstenberg boundary of  $X$ .*

Our work is primarily motivated by the study of discrete subgroups of isometry groups of nonpositively curved symmetric spaces; before discussing these, we explain how the theorems above generalize to  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesics and  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiisometric embeddings.

**$\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity** The role of the compact  $\Theta \subset \text{int}(\sigma_{\text{mod}})$ , which appeared above, is now played by a “Weyl-convex” compact subset  $\Theta \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  which intersects the boundary of  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  only in the open faces containing the open simplex  $\text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ . For instance, if  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  is a vertex, then  $\Theta$  is required to be disjoint from the top-dimensional face of  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  not containing  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ . With this modification, the definition of uniformly regular quasigeodesics generalizes to the one of uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesics.

Let  $\tau$  be a simplex of the Tits boundary of  $X$  which has type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ . We next describe the replacement for the euclidean Weyl chambers  $V(x, \sigma)$  in  $X$  with  $\tau$  playing the role of  $\sigma$ . They are replaced by the Weyl cones  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ : These convex subsets of  $X$  are unions of geodesic rays  $x\xi$  in  $X$  connecting  $x$  to ideal boundary points  $\xi \in \partial_{\infty} X$ , which belong to a certain subcomplex  $\text{st}(\tau) \subset \partial_{\infty} X$ . This subcomplex is the union of chambers  $\sigma$  containing  $\tau$ . The cones  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  are no longer contained in maximal flats in  $X$  (unless  $\tau_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ ); instead, each  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  is a subset of the parallel set in  $X$  of a geodesic  $l$  through  $x$ , asymptotic to a generic point in  $\tau$ . Such parallel

sets are said to have the *type*  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ . The diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, y)$  are again defined as intersections

$$V(x, \text{st}(\tau)) \cap V(y, \text{st}(\hat{\tau}))$$

for opposite simplices  $\tau$  and  $\hat{\tau}$  in the Tits boundary of  $X$ .

Now, we are ready to state our results. The main result is a Morse lemma for  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesics in model spaces (see Theorem 5.16 and Corollary 5.23):

- Theorem 1.3** (Morse lemma) (i) *Every finite uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesic path  $q$  in  $X$  with endpoints  $x$  and  $y$  is contained in a neighborhood of the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, y)$ .*
- (ii) *Every uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesic ray  $q$  in  $X$  with initial point  $x$  is contained in a neighborhood of a unique Weyl cone  $V = V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  of type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ .*
- (iii) *Every uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular complete quasigeodesic  $q$  in  $X$  is contained in a neighborhood of a unique parallel set  $P$  of type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  and, moreover, is contained in a neighborhood of the union  $V(z, \text{st}(\tau)) \cup V(z, \text{st}(\hat{\tau})) \subset P$  of opposite Weyl cones of type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  with common tip  $z \in P$ .*

Furthermore, the distance from  $q$  to  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, y)$ ,  $V$  or  $V(z, \text{st}(\tau)) \cup V(z, \text{st}(\hat{\tau}))$  is bounded above in terms of the quasiisometry constants of  $q$ , the scale  $D$  and the subset  $\Theta$ . In case (iii), the common tip  $P$  can be chosen uniformly close to any point on  $q$ .

In order to help the reader to appreciate the relation of this theorem to Theorem 1.1, we note that the regularity assumptions in Theorem 1.3 are weaker (directions of segments  $xy$  are allowed to belong to larger subsets of  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ ), while the conclusions are weaker as well, since we can only conclude that quasigeodesics lie close to certain sets which are larger than the ones in Theorem 1.1.

Applying these results about regular quasigeodesics to quasiisometric embeddings we obtain (see Theorems 6.13 and 6.14):

**Theorem 1.4** (hyperbolicity of domain and boundary map) *Suppose that  $q: Z \rightarrow X$  is a uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiisometric embedding from a quasigeodesic metric space into a model space. Then:*

- (i)  $Z$  is Gromov hyperbolic.

(ii) If  $Z$  is locally compact, the map  $q$  extends to a map

$$\bar{q}: \bar{Z} \rightarrow \bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$$

from the (visual) Gromov compactification  $\bar{Z} = Z \cup \partial_{\infty}Z$ , which is continuous at  $\partial_{\infty}Z$  and sends distinct ideal boundary points to antipodal elements of the flag space  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}X = \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\infty}X)$ .

An application of this theorem is a new and very simple coarse-geometric characterization of *Morse subgroups* of the isometry groups  $G = \text{Isom}(X)$  of model spaces  $X$ . This class of discrete subgroups of semisimple Lie groups was defined in [10] (in the context of symmetric spaces), where various equivalent characterizations of word hyperbolic Morse subgroups were established (including the characterization as *Anosov subgroups*). We obtain (see Corollary 5.32 and Theorem 6.15):

**Theorem 1.5** *The following are equivalent for a finitely generated group  $\Gamma$  and a homomorphism  $\Gamma \rightarrow G$ :*

- (i) *The group  $\Gamma$  is hyperbolic and the homomorphism  $\Gamma \rightarrow G$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse.*
- (ii) *The orbit maps  $\Gamma \rightarrow X$  are uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiisometric embeddings.*

The following reformulation is a higher-rank analogue of one of the standard characterizations of convex-cocompact subgroups of rank 1 Lie groups as finitely generated undistorted subgroups. The regularity condition in this corollary is necessary already for subgroups of  $\text{SL}(2, \mathbb{R}) \times \text{SL}(2, \mathbb{R})$ ; see Example 6.34 in [10].

**Corollary 1.6** *A finitely generated subgroup  $\Gamma < G$  is word hyperbolic and  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse if and only if  $\Gamma$  is undistorted in  $G$  and uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular.*

Note that uniform  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity of a discrete subgroup  $\Gamma < G$  means that the geometric limit set  $\Lambda(\Gamma) \subset \partial_{\infty}X$  (the accumulation set of a  $\Gamma$ -orbit in the ideal boundary of  $X$ ) contains no singular points.

**Strategy of the proof** The main idea behind the proof of Theorems 1.1 and 1.3 is inspired by trying to follow the proof of the Morse lemma for  $\delta$ -hyperbolic metric spaces (which goes back to Morse himself): If a uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesic path  $q$  connecting points  $x, y \in X$  strays too far from the diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, y)$ , we use the nearest-point projection to  $\diamond$  to show that it is a uniformly inefficient connection of its endpoints. This leads to a conflict, because sufficiently long quasigeodesics have

long, arbitrarily efficient (ie almost distance-minimizing) subpaths. In the setting of a  $\delta$ -hyperbolic space  $X$ , one is helped by the fact that the nearest-point projection  $\pi_\diamond$  to a geodesic interval  $\diamond \subset X$  contracts distances in metric balls  $B(z, R) \subset X$  by an exponentially large factor, in terms of the minimal distance between  $B(z, R)$  and  $\diamond$ . This fails in the setting of higher-rank symmetric spaces and euclidean buildings  $X$ . Instead, we define a certain length metric (of Carnot–Finsler type)  $d_\diamond$  on diamonds  $\diamond \subset X$  by restricting to a certain class of piecewise-geodesic paths in  $\diamond$ , which we call *nonlongitudinal*. The definition of such paths is, again, quite technical, but (if  $\tau_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ ) the reader can think of piecewise-geodesic paths where each subsegment is a singular geodesic.

We then prove (Theorem 4.7):

**Theorem 1.7** *For each euclidean building  $X$  (equipped with its standard CAT(0) metric  $d$ ), the projection*

$$(X, d) \xrightarrow{\pi_\diamond} (\diamond, d_\diamond)$$

*is locally 1-Lipschitz outside  $\diamond$ .*

In order to appreciate the strength of this statement, we note that the pseudometric  $d_\diamond$  is strictly larger than the metric  $d$  when restricted to *longitudinal* segments in  $\diamond$ . Therefore, the above theorem establishes constraints on the behavior of rectifiable regular paths in  $X$  and, in particular, of regular bilipschitz paths. As an application, we prove (see Section 5.1):

**Theorem 1.8** *Suppose that  $c$  is an “almost length-minimizing” uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path in a euclidean building  $X$ , connecting points  $x$  and  $y$ . Then  $c$  has to meet the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, y)$  in one more point, besides  $x$  and  $y$ .*

The condition that  $c$  is “almost length-minimizing” is, actually, not very restrictive, since each rectifiable path in  $X$  contains such subpaths. As an application of this result we then show (see Theorem 5.6):

**Theorem 1.9** *Every rectifiable uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path  $c$  in  $X$  is entirely contained in the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, y)$  determined by the endpoints  $x$  and  $y$  of  $c$ .*

This theorem is reminiscent of the fact that each topological path in a real tree  $T$  is contained in a geodesic segment in  $T$ . This fact is used for proving the Morse lemma in the case of  $\delta$ -hyperbolic geodesic spaces via ultralimits (see Druţu and Kapovich [4]). Our argument then proceeds roughly along the same lines as that proof. Namely,

assuming that Theorem 1.3 fails, we construct a sequence of uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic paths  $q_n$  in a model space  $X$ ; after passing to suitable ultralimits, we obtain a uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular bilipschitz path  $q_\omega$  in an asymptotic cone  $X_\omega$  of  $X$ , which violates Theorem 1.9. (The ultralimit  $X_\omega$  is a euclidean building.) Along the way, we have to overcome yet another difficulty. One of the steps in proving the Morse lemma in the hyperbolic setting via asymptotic cones is to show that each asymptotic cone is a uniquely geodesic space (ie every geodesic in the cone is the ultralimit of a sequence of geodesics). Similarly, in our proof, we have to show that the ultralimit of a sequence of parallel sets in  $X$  is a parallel set in the cone  $X_\omega$  (a priori, it is just a proper subset of such a parallel set), and analogous statements for Weyl cones and diamonds.

**Organization of the paper** In Section 2 we review basic notions in the theory of model spaces (nonpositively curved symmetric spaces and buildings), as well as ultralimits and asymptotic cones. Section 3 is long and technical; it contains the bulk of the technical results of the paper. In this section we define and analyze properties of Weyl cones and diamonds. We then define two key notions in the paper: regularity and longitudinality of broken segments and paths in model spaces, as well as their coarse analogues. We establish a preliminary analogue of Theorem 1.3 for a certain class of broken paths in euclidean buildings, called *straight paths*. Furthermore, we prove results about ultralimits of parallel sets, Weyl cones and diamonds. In Section 4 we define the modified metric  $d_\diamond$  on diamonds and prove a contraction theorem for the nearest-point projections to diamonds in euclidean buildings (Theorem 4.7). In Section 5 we prove the main result of our paper, Theorem 1.3, and its corollaries, including continuous behavior of ends of Morse quasigeodesic rays. Lastly, in Section 6 we establish structural results for regular and (coarsely) regular subsets of model spaces, and prove Theorems 1.4 and 1.5.

**Remark 1** This paper was written in November 2014. We refer the reader to [8; 7; 11; 12] for surveys of our work, further developments and for the *Finsler geometry* viewpoint on the results of the present paper.

**Remark 2** The results of this paper in conjunction with [10] imply most of the main results of the later paper [5].

**Acknowledgements** Kapovich was supported by the NSF grants DMS-12-05312 and DMS-16-04241 as well as the KIAS scholar program and Simons Foundation grant 391602. Porti was supported by the grant Mineco MTM2012-34834.

## 2 Preliminaries

This section contains some background material on metric geometry, geometry of buildings and ultralimits. We refer the reader to [3; 1] for further reading on metric and CAT(0) geometry, and to [6, Chapter 3], [13, Chapter 2.4] or [4, Chapter 7] for a discussion of the notion of ultralimits and asymptotic cones and their basic properties.

### 2.1 Metric spaces

Let  $(Z, d)$  be a metric space. We let  $B(z, r)$  and  $\bar{B}(z, r)$  denote the open and closed  $r$ -balls, respectively, centered at a point  $z \in Z$ . For a subset  $A \subset Z$ , we denote by  $\text{rad}(A, z)$  its *radius* with respect to the center  $z$ , ie the minimal  $r \in [0, +\infty]$  such that  $A \subset \bar{B}(z, r)$ . For a subset  $Z' \subset Z$ , we let  $N_D(Z')$  denote the open  $D$ -neighborhood of  $Z'$  in  $Z$ . We will use the notation  $L(c)$  for the length of a (rectifiable) path  $c$  in  $Z$ .

**Definition 2.1** (almost distance-minimizing path) We say that a path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow Z$  is  $\epsilon$ -distance-minimizing if

$$L(c) \leq (1 + \epsilon) \cdot d(c(a), c(b)).$$

**Lemma 2.2** Every rectifiable path contains, for arbitrarily small  $\epsilon > 0$ , subpaths which are  $\epsilon$ -distance-minimizing.

**Proof** Suppose that the path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow Z$  is rectifiable. We choose a subdivision  $a = t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_k = b$  which almost yields the length of the path,

$$(1 + \epsilon) \cdot \sum_{i=1}^k d(c(t_{i-1}), c(t_i)) \geq L(c) = \sum_{i=1}^k L(c|_{[t_{i-1}, t_i]}).$$

Then one of the subpaths  $c|_{[t_{i-1}, t_i]}$  is  $\epsilon$ -distance-minimizing.  $\square$

We will use the term *pseudometric* for a distance function where different points may have infinite distance (however not distance zero).

### 2.2 Spaces with curvature bounded above

If  $(Z, d)$  is a CAT(1) space, then a subset  $C \subset Z$  is called *convex* if for any two points  $\zeta_1, \zeta_2 \in C$  with  $d(\zeta_1, \zeta_2) < \pi$ , the unique geodesic in  $Z$  connecting  $\zeta_1$  and  $\zeta_2$  is contained in  $C$ .



Suppose now that  $X$  is a CAT(0) space.

We will use the notation  $xy$  for the unique geodesic segment in  $X$  connecting  $x$  to  $y$ . We will usually regard it as an *oriented* segment, equipped with its natural orientation from the initial point  $x$  to the endpoint  $y$ . Similarly, given an ideal boundary point  $\xi \in \partial_\infty X$  and a point  $x \in X$ , we let  $x\xi$  denote the unique geodesic ray from  $x$  asymptotic to  $\xi$ , and  $\xi x$  the same ray with the reversed orientation. We will denote by  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k$  the broken geodesic path which is the concatenation of the segments  $x_{i-1}x_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, k$ . Similarly, we will denote by  $x_0 \dots x_k\xi_+$ ,  $\xi_-x_0 \dots x_k$  and  $\xi_-x_0 \dots x_k\xi_+$  the semi- and bi-infinite paths obtained by attaching one or two rays at the ends of  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k$ .

We will use the notation  $\partial_\infty X$  for the *ideal* or *visual boundary* of  $X$ , equipped with the *visual topology*. It carries in addition another natural topology, called the *Tits topology*, which is finer than the visual topology; it is induced by a metric  $\angle_{\text{Tits}}$  on  $\partial_\infty X$ , called the *Tits metric*. For a subset  $Y \subset X$  we let  $\partial_\infty Y \subset \partial_\infty X$  denote the accumulation set of  $Y$  in  $\partial_\infty X$ . For an oriented geodesic line  $l$  in  $X$ , we let  $l(\pm\infty) \in \partial_\infty X$  denote its ideal endpoints,

$$l(\pm\infty) = \lim_{t \rightarrow \pm\infty} l(t),$$

where  $l: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow X$  is a (unit-speed) parametrization of  $l$  consistent with the orientation. Then  $\partial_\infty l = \{l(-\infty), l(\infty)\}$ . Similarly, we denote the ideal endpoint of a ray  $r \subset X$  by  $r(+\infty)$ .

For an ideal point  $\xi \in \partial_\infty X$ , we denote by  $b_\xi$  a *Busemann function* at  $\xi$ , and by  $\text{Hb}_{\xi,x}$  the *horoball* centered at  $\xi$  and containing  $x$  in its boundary horosphere, ie  $\text{Hb}_{\xi,x} = \{b_\xi \leq b_\xi(x)\}$ .

We will say that two segments  $xy$  and  $x'y'$  are *oriented  $r$ -close* if their initial and endpoints are  $r$ -close, ie  $d(x, x') \leq r$  and  $d(y, y') \leq r$ . In view of the convexity of the distance function of CAT(0)-spaces, any two segments which are oriented  $r$ -close are also within Hausdorff distance  $r$  from each other.

We will denote by  $\Delta(x, y, z)$  the geodesic *triangle* with vertices  $x, y, z \in X$ , ie the *one-dimensional* object  $xy \cup yz \cup zx$ . If  $\eta, \zeta \in \partial_\infty X$ , we denote by  $\Delta(x, y, \zeta)$  the *ideal triangle* with vertices  $x, y, \zeta$ , that is, the union  $x\zeta \cup xy \cup y\zeta$ , and by  $\Delta(x, \eta, \zeta)$  the *ideal hinge*  $x\eta \cup x\zeta$  with vertices  $x, \eta, \zeta$ . We say that a triangle (ideal triangle, hinge) is *rigid* or can be *filled in by a flat triangle (half-strip, sector)* or *spans a flat triangle (half-strip, sector)* if it is contained in a convex subset which is isometric to a convex subset of euclidean plane.

We will denote by  $\Sigma_x X$  the *space of directions* at a point  $x \in X$ ; this is a replacement of the unit tangent sphere in a Riemannian manifold (see [3; 13] for the precise definition). The space  $\Sigma_x X$  is a CAT(1) space equipped with the *angular metric*, denoted by  $\angle(\xi, \eta)$ . Each geodesic segment  $xy$  determines a direction  $\vec{x}y \in \Sigma_x X$ . We will use the notation  $\angle_x(y, z)$  for the *angle* at  $x$  between the segments  $xy$  and  $xz$  in  $X$ , ie the distance in  $\Sigma_x X$  between the directions  $\vec{x}y$  and  $\vec{x}z$ . This notation extends to the case of semi-infinite geodesics in  $X$ : For a point  $\xi \in \partial_\infty X$ , we denote by  $\angle_x(y, \xi)$  the angle between  $xy$  and the geodesic ray  $x\xi$ . Furthermore, for a subset  $A$  containing  $x$ , we denote by  $\angle_x(y, A)$  the angular distance between  $\vec{x}y$  and  $\Sigma_x A$  in  $\Sigma_x X$ .

The *initial velocity*  $\dot{\rho} \in \Sigma_x X$  of a geodesic  $\rho: \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow X$  in  $X$  is the direction of  $\rho$  at the point  $x = \rho(0)$ .

For a closed convex subset  $C \subset X$  we have the *nearest-point projection*

$$\pi_C: X \rightarrow C.$$

This projection is a 1-Lipschitz map.

Consider the special situation when  $X$  is a Riemannian CAT(0) space (a Hadamard manifold) and  $C \subset X$  is a totally geodesic subspace. Then the distance function

$$d(x, C) = \min_{y \in C} d(x, y)$$

is 1-Lipschitz and smooth outside of  $C$ ; the gradient lines of this function are the geodesics  $x\bar{x}$ , where  $\bar{x} = \pi_C(x)$ . Suppose that  $r: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X - C$  is a unit-speed geodesic ray with ideal endpoint  $r(+\infty) = \xi \in \partial_\infty X$ . Then the function  $f(t) = d(r(t), C)$  is smooth with derivative

$$(2-1) \quad f'(t) = -\cos(\angle_{r(t)}(\bar{r}(t), \xi)),$$

where  $\bar{r} = \pi_C \circ r$  denotes the projection of the ray.

## 2.3 Buildings and symmetric spaces

In the paper we will be using *nonpositively curved symmetric spaces*, *spherical* and *euclidean* buildings. We regard Riemannian symmetric spaces of noncompact type and euclidean buildings as the smooth “archimedean” and the singular “nonarchimedean” members, respectively, of the family of CAT(0) “model spaces” with rigid geometry. Both symmetric spaces and euclidean buildings will usually be denoted by  $X$ , while spherical buildings will be denoted by  $B$ . We will only consider symmetric spaces

and euclidean buildings  $X$  of *noncompact type*, which means that  $X$  is  $\text{CAT}(0)$  and has *no flat factor*, ie is not isometric to the direct product of metric spaces  $X' \times \mathbb{R}^k$  with  $k \geq 1$ .

**Definition 2.3** By a *model space*, we mean a symmetric space of noncompact type or a euclidean building of noncompact type.

We rule out flat factors for our model spaces, in part because, as far as the results discussed in this paper are concerned, the case of spaces with a flat factor immediately reduces to the case without. However, many arguments in the paper use *parallel sets* of geodesics or flats in model spaces: these parallel sets do have flat factors and, hence, are  $\text{CAT}(0)$  symmetric spaces and euclidean buildings which do not have noncompact type.

The two types of model spaces are connected via *asymptotic cones*; this connection will be explained in Section 2.7.

For a treatment of buildings from the metric perspective of spaces with curvature bounded above, we refer to [13, Chapters 3–4]. Some notions needed in this paper, or closely related to it, have been discussed in the case of symmetric spaces in [10, Chapters 2 and 5.1], and the discussion in the building case is very similar, and often simpler. It is important to stress here that the euclidean buildings we are considering are allowed to be *nondiscrete* and in particular *not locally compact*; such buildings appear as asymptotic cones of symmetric spaces of noncompact type.

## 2.4 Spherical buildings

Instead of giving the precise definitions of spherical buildings (and euclidean buildings in the following section), we will describe below some of their important features. Part of this section is a review of the material in [10, 2.4.1–2.4.2], to which we refer the reader for more details.

From the metric viewpoint, spherical buildings are  $\text{CAT}(1)$  spaces; we will denote their metrics by  $\angle$ .

A spherical building  $B$  has an associated *spherical Coxeter complex*  $(a_{\text{mod}}, W)$ , where the *spherical model apartment*  $a_{\text{mod}}$  is a euclidean unit sphere and  $W$  is a finite reflection group acting on  $a_{\text{mod}}$ , called the *Coxeter* or *Weyl group* of  $B$ . The quotient  $\sigma_{\text{mod}} \cong a_{\text{mod}}/W$  is called the *model chamber*. We identify it with a chamber in the model apartment,  $\sigma_{\text{mod}} \subset a_{\text{mod}}$ . We will say that the building  $B$  has *type*  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ .

As long as  $W$  has no fixed point on  $a_{\text{mod}}$ , the model simplex  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  is a spherical simplex in  $a_{\text{mod}}$  and has diameter  $\leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . We will use the notation  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  for faces of  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  and  $W_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  for the stabilizer of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  in  $W$ . The *longest element* of the group  $W$  is the unique element  $w_o \in W$  which sends  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  to  $-\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  (the latter is also a chamber in  $a_{\text{mod}}$ ). The composition  $\iota = -w_o$  preserves the model chamber  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . (For some Weyl groups  $W$ ,  $w_o = \text{id}$ ; then  $\iota = \text{id}$ .)

Each spherical building has a natural structure of a polysimplicial cell complex. Facets (top-dimensional faces) of this complex are called *chambers* of  $B$ . Each building  $B$  comes equipped with a system (“atlas”) of isometric embeddings  $a_{\text{mod}} \rightarrow B$ , whose images are called (spherical) *apartments*. Any two points of  $B$  belong to an apartment. It is important to stress that the spherical buildings in this paper are *not assumed to be thick*, ie a codimension-one face may be adjacent to only two chambers.

A splitting of the model chamber as a spherical join  $\sigma_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}^1 \circ \sigma_{\text{mod}}^2$  — equivalently, a splitting  $(a_{\text{mod}}, W) = (a_{\text{mod}}^1, W_1) \circ (a_{\text{mod}}^2, W_2)$  of the spherical Coxeter complex — induces *splittings* of all buildings  $B$  of type  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  as spherical joins  $B = B_1 \circ B_2$  of spherical buildings  $B_i$  of types  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^i$ .

Two faces  $\bar{\tau}_+, \bar{\tau}_- \subset a_{\text{mod}}$  are called *antipodal* or *opposite* if  $-\bar{\tau}_- = \bar{\tau}_+$ . Similarly, two points  $\bar{\xi}, \bar{\xi}' \in a_{\text{mod}}$  are antipodal if  $\bar{\xi}' = -\bar{\xi}$ . These definitions extend to the entire building  $B$  since any two faces (and any two points) are contained in an apartment in  $B$ .

In a general simplicial complex  $\Sigma$ , we define the *interior*  $\text{int}(\tau)$  of a simplex  $\tau$  as the corresponding open face. We define the *star*  $\text{st}(\tau) \subset \Sigma$  of  $\tau$  as the union of all (closed) faces containing  $\tau$ . We note that the star is also known as the *residue*; this notion of the star should not be confused with the smallest subcomplex of  $\Sigma$  consisting of faces which have nonempty intersection with  $\tau$ . We define the *open star* of  $\tau$ ,

$$\text{ost}(\tau) \subset \text{st}(\tau),$$

as the union of all open faces whose closure contains  $\tau$ . Furthermore, we define the *boundary* of the star,

$$\partial \text{st}(\tau) := \text{st}(\tau) - \text{ost}(\tau);$$

it is the union of all (closed) faces of the star which do not contain  $\tau$ . If the simplex  $\tau$  is maximal, ie not contained in a simplex of larger dimension, then  $\text{st}(\tau) = \tau$ ,  $\text{ost}(\tau) = \text{int}(\tau)$  is the open face and  $\partial \text{st}(\tau) = \partial \tau$  is the topological frontier of  $\tau$ . We

will apply these notions to spherical buildings and their model chambers, which both carry natural structures as simplicial complexes.

There exists a canonical projection

$$\theta: B \rightarrow \sigma_{\text{mod}},$$

called the *type map*. The type map restricts to an isometry on each chamber of  $B$  and, hence, is 1-Lipschitz. A *type* is a point in  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ , and a *face type* is a face of  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . The type of a point  $\xi \in B$  is  $\theta(\xi)$ , and the type of a face  $\tau \subset B$  is  $\theta(\tau)$ . If the simplices  $\tau_{\pm}$  in  $B$  are opposite to each other, then  $\theta(\tau_{-}) = \iota\theta(\tau_{+})$ . We call a type  $\bar{\xi} \in \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  a *root type* if the ball  $\bar{B}(\bar{\xi}, \frac{\pi}{2}) \subset a_{\text{mod}}$  is a subcomplex, equivalently, if the great sphere  $S(\bar{\xi}, \frac{\pi}{2}) \subset a_{\text{mod}}$  is a wall.

Throughout the paper, we will denote by  $\tau_{\text{mod}} \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  a face type.

We denote by  $\text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(B)$  the *flag space* of type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplices in  $B$ . It is a discrete space. If  $B$  carries an additional structure as a *topological building*, as do Tits boundaries of model spaces — compare below — then the flag spaces inherit a topology.

A point  $\xi \in B$  is called  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -*regular* if  $\theta(\xi) \in \text{ost}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  and  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -*singular* if  $\theta(\xi) \in \partial \text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ . We call the  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ -regular points simply *regular*; these are the points with type in  $\text{int}(\sigma_{\text{mod}})$ . The  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular points in  $B$  form an open subset, whose connected components are the open stars  $\text{ost}(\tau)$  of the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  faces  $\tau$ . For a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -regular point  $\xi \in B$  we define  $\tau_{\pm}(\xi)$  as the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$  face such that  $\xi \in \text{ost}(\tau_{\pm}(\xi))$ ; we set  $\tau(\xi) = \tau_{+}(\xi)$ .

A subset  $A \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  is called  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -*convex* (or *Weyl-convex*) if its symmetrization  $W_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}A \subseteq \text{st}(\sigma_{\text{mod}})$  is a convex subset of  $a_{\text{mod}}$ ; see [10, Definition 2.15]. By  $\Theta$ ,  $\Theta'$  and  $\Theta''$  we will always denote compact  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -convex subsets of  $\text{ost}(\tau_{\text{mod}}) \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . Note that  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  is determined by such a subset  $\Theta$ , namely, as the smallest face whose interior intersects  $\Theta$ . When we use several such subsets  $\Theta$ ,  $\Theta'$  and  $\Theta''$ , we will always assume that  $\Theta \subset \text{int}(\Theta')$  and  $\Theta' \subset \text{int}(\Theta'')$ .

Since  $\text{diam}(\sigma_{\text{mod}}) \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , for every type  $\bar{\xi} \in \tau_{\text{mod}}$  there exists a radius  $\rho = \rho(\Theta, \bar{\xi}) < \frac{\pi}{2}$  such that

$$(2-2) \quad \Theta \subset \bar{B}(\bar{\xi}, \rho).$$

The following constant will frequently occur:

$$(2-3) \quad \epsilon_0(\Theta) := \angle(\Theta, \partial \text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})) = \min\{\angle(\eta, \zeta) : \eta \in \Theta, \zeta \in \partial \text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})\} > 0.$$

Sometimes we will also use

$$(2-4) \quad \epsilon_0(\Theta, \Theta') := \angle(\Theta, \text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}}) - \Theta') > 0.$$

A point  $\xi \in B$  is called  $\Theta$ -regular if  $\theta(\xi) \in \Theta$ . We define the  $\Theta$ -star of a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplex  $\tau \subset B$  as the set of  $\Theta$ -regular points in its star,  $\text{st}_\Theta(\tau) = \text{st}(\tau) \cap \theta^{-1}(\Theta)$ . We will often use the fact that the  $\Theta$ -stars are uniformly separated from each other:

**Lemma 2.4** *For any two distinct type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplices  $\tau_1, \tau_2 \subset B$ , the (nearest-point) distance between  $\text{st}_\Theta(\tau_1)$  and  $\text{st}_\Theta(\tau_2)$  is  $\geq \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ .*

**Proof** Since the open stars are disjoint, any path connecting a point in  $\text{st}_\Theta(\tau_1)$  to a point in  $\text{st}_\Theta(\tau_2)$  must exit  $\text{st}_\Theta(\tau_1)$  at its boundary. It therefore has a subpath which projects via the type map  $\theta$  to a path in  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  connecting a point in  $\Theta$  to a point in  $\partial \text{ost}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ . The assertion follows because  $\theta$  is 1-Lipschitz. □

We will always use the conventions

$$\tau_{\text{mod}}^+ := \tau_{\text{mod}}, \quad \tau_{\text{mod}}^- := \iota\tau_{\text{mod}}$$

and

$$\Theta_+ := \Theta, \quad \Theta_- := \iota\Theta.$$

A *singular sphere* in a spherical building  $B$  is an isometrically embedded (euclidean unit) sphere  $s \subset B$  which is, at the same time, a subcomplex of  $B$ . Each singular sphere equals the intersection of some (possibly one) apartments in  $B$ .

For an ordered pair of opposite simplices  $\tau_\pm \subset B$ , we denote by  $s(\tau_-, \tau_+) \subset B$  the singular sphere spanned by  $\tau_\pm$ , ie containing them as top-dimensional simplices. Equivalently,  $s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  is the smallest (with respect to inclusion) isometrically embedded sphere in  $B$  containing  $\tau_+ \cup \tau_-$ . Each singular sphere  $s \subset B$  has the form  $s = s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  for a pair of antipodal simplices  $\tau_\pm$ .

Given a singular sphere  $s \subset B$ , we let  $\mathcal{B}(s) \subset B$  denote the subbuilding which is the union of all apartments containing  $s$ . There is a natural decomposition

$$(2-5) \quad \mathcal{B}(s) \cong s \circ \Sigma_s B$$

as the spherical join of the sphere  $s$  and its *link*  $\Sigma_s B$  in  $B$ . In the case when  $s = s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ , we will use the notation  $\mathcal{B}(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  for  $\mathcal{B}(s)$ . When we want to specify the ambient building  $B$ , we put it as a subscript and write  $\mathcal{B}_B(s)$ .

The following properties will be often used:

- (i) Each apartment  $a \subset \mathcal{B}(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  contains  $s = s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ .
- (ii)  $\text{st}(\tau_{\pm}) \subset \mathcal{B}(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ .
- (iii)  $\text{ost}(\tau_{\pm})$  is open in  $\mathbf{B}$ ; in particular,  $\text{ost}(\tau_{\pm})$  is open in  $\mathcal{B}(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ .

In view of the spherical join decomposition, it is clear that every point in  $s$  has inside  $\mathcal{B}(s)$  a unique antipode, and this antipode lies in  $s$ .

**Lemma 2.5** *All antipodes  $\xi_- \in \mathcal{B}(s)$  of a point  $\xi_+ \in \text{st}(\tau_+)$  are contained in  $\text{st}(\tau_-)$ . Moreover, if  $\xi_+ \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$ , then  $\xi_- \in \text{ost}(\tau_-)$ .*

**Proof** Let  $\xi_+ \in \text{st}(\tau_+)$ , and let  $\xi_- \in \mathcal{B}(s)$  be an antipode of  $\xi_+$ . Since  $\mathcal{B}(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  is a subbuilding, the pair of antipodes  $\xi_{\pm}$  is contained in an apartment  $a \subset \mathcal{B}(s)$ . As for all apartments in  $\mathcal{B}(s)$ , we have that  $\tau_{\pm} \subset a$ . There exists a chamber  $\sigma_+ \subset a$  containing  $\xi_+$  with face  $\tau_+$ . The opposite chamber  $\sigma_-$  in  $a$  contains  $\xi_-$  and has  $\tau_-$  as a face. Thus,  $\xi_- \in \text{st}(\tau_-)$ . The assertion for open stars follows. □

The last observation extends to almost antipodes in a quantitative manner.

**Lemma 2.6** *Let  $\xi_+ \in \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+)$  and  $\eta_- \in \mathcal{B}(s)$  be points such that  $\angle(\xi_+, \eta_-) > \pi - \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ . Then  $\eta_- \in \text{ost}(\tau_-)$ .*

**Proof** We only need to treat the case when  $\xi_+$  and  $\eta_-$  are not opposite. The geodesic arc  $\eta_- \xi_+$  extends to an arc  $\eta_- \xi_+ \eta_+$  of length  $\pi$ . It connects  $\eta_-$  to an antipode  $\eta_+$ . Since  $\angle(\xi_+, \eta_+) < \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ , the arc  $\xi_+ \eta_+$  is too short to leave  $\text{ost}(\tau_+)$  and therefore  $\eta_+ \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$ . The previous lemma then implies that  $\eta_- \in \text{ost}(\tau_-)$ . □

**Corollary 2.7** *Let  $\xi_+ \in \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+)$  and let  $\zeta_- \in \mathbf{B}$  be an antipode of  $\xi_+$  outside  $\mathcal{B}(s)$ . Then  $\angle(\zeta_-, \mathcal{B}(s)) \geq \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ .*

**Proof** Suppose that  $\angle(\zeta_-, \mathcal{B}(s)) < \epsilon_0(\Theta)$  and let  $\bar{\zeta}_- \in \mathcal{B}(s)$  be the nearest-point projection of  $\zeta_-$  to  $\mathcal{B}(s)$ . (Note that, as a subbuilding,  $\mathcal{B}(s)$  is a closed convex subset of  $\mathbf{B}$ , and the nearest-point projection to  $\mathcal{B}(s)$  is well-defined on the open  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ -neighborhood.) Since  $\text{ost}(\tau_-) \subset \mathcal{B}(s)$  is open in  $\mathbf{B}$ , it cannot contain the projection of a point outside  $\mathcal{B}(s)$ , and hence  $\bar{\zeta}_- \notin \text{ost}(\tau_-)$ . On the other hand, we have  $\angle(\xi_+, \bar{\zeta}_-) > \pi - \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ , which leads to a contradiction with the previous lemma. □

It has been proven in [10, 2.5.2; 12, Lemma 2.6] that stars and  $\Theta$ -stars of simplices are convex. This follows from the fact that they can be represented as intersections of balls with radius  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ . More precisely, one has:

**Proposition 2.8** (convexity of stars; see [10, Lemma 2.12; 12, Lemma 2.6]) *Let  $\tau \subset B$  be a simplex.*

- (i) *For every simplex  $\hat{\tau} \subset B$  opposite to  $\tau$ , the star  $\text{st}(\tau)$  is the intersection of  $\mathcal{B}(\hat{\tau}, \tau)$  and the simplicial  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ -balls whose interior contains  $\text{int}(\tau)$  and whose center lies in  $\mathcal{B}(\hat{\tau}, \tau)$ .*
- (ii)  *$\text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau)$  equals the intersection of all  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ -balls containing it.*

## 2.5 CAT(0) model spaces

Similarly to spherical buildings, each model space  $X$  has an associated *euclidean Coxeter complex*  $(F_{\text{mod}}, W_{\text{aff}})$ , where the *model flat* (or *apartment*)  $F_{\text{mod}}$  is a euclidean space and  $W_{\text{aff}}$  is a, possibly nondiscrete, group of isometries of  $F_{\text{mod}}$  generated by reflections. The linear part of this group is a finite reflection group, called the *Weyl group*  $W$  of  $X$ ; we pick a basepoint  $0 \in F_{\text{mod}}$  and think of  $W$  as acting on  $F_{\text{mod}}$  fixing 0. The dimension of  $F_{\text{mod}}$  is called the *rank* of  $X$ . The quotient  $F_{\text{mod}}/W$  will be denoted by  $\Delta$  or  $\Delta_{\text{euc}}$  or  $V_{\text{mod}}$ ; it is called the *euclidean model Weyl chamber* of  $X$ . We identify it with a euclidean Weyl chamber with tip 0 in the model flat,  $\Delta \subset F_{\text{mod}}$ .

Each model space  $X$  comes equipped with a system (“atlas”) of isometric embeddings

$$\kappa^{-1}: F_{\text{mod}} \rightarrow X.$$

The images of the maps  $\kappa^{-1}$  are the *maximal flats* in  $X$ . (In the case when  $X$  is a euclidean building, they are also called *apartments*.) The inverse maps  $\kappa$  are called *charts* for the maximal flats (or apartments). The charts are *compatible* in the sense that for any two charts  $\kappa_1$  and  $\kappa_2$  the transition function  $\kappa_1 \circ \kappa_2^{-1}$  is the restriction of an element in  $W_{\text{aff}}$ .

Any two points in  $X$  are contained in a maximal flat.

In addition to its usual distance function  $d$ , each model space comes equipped with a  $\Delta$ -valued *distance function* or  $\Delta$ -*distance*, denoted by  $d_{\Delta}$ . The function  $d_{\Delta}$  is defined on  $F_{\text{mod}}$  by

$$d_{\Delta}(x, y) = \text{proj}(y - x) \in \Delta,$$

where  $\text{proj}: F_{\text{mod}}/W \cong \Delta$  is the quotient map. The function  $d_{\Delta}$  extends to the entire model space  $X$  due to the compatibility of apartment charts and the fact that any two points are contained in a maximal flat.



The  $\Delta$ -distance satisfies the symmetry property

$$d_{\Delta}(y, x) = d_{\Delta}(x, y).$$

If  $X$  is a symmetric space, then  $d_{\Delta}(x, y)$  completely determines the  $\text{Isom}_o(X)$ -congruence class of the pair  $(x, y)$ , ie  $d_{\Delta}(x, y) = d_{\Delta}(x', y')$  if and only if there exists  $g \in \text{Isom}_o(X)$  such that  $g(x) = x'$  and  $g(y) = y'$ .

The projection

$$(2-6) \quad X \times X \rightarrow \Delta, \quad (x, y) \mapsto d_{\Delta}(x, y),$$

is 1-Lipschitz in each of the two variables, which implies the *triangle inequalities* for  $\Delta$ -lengths

$$(2-7) \quad \|d_{\Delta}(x, y) - d_{\Delta}(x, y')\| \leq \|d_{\Delta}(y, y')\| = d(y, y')$$

and

$$\|d_{\Delta}(x, y) - d_{\Delta}(x', y)\| \leq \|d_{\Delta}(x, x')\| = d(x, x'),$$

where the differences of  $\Delta$ -lengths are taken in  $F_{\text{mod}}$ , viewed as a vector space with origin 0; see [9].

Spherical buildings appear naturally when one looks at the geometry at infinity of a model space and, in the euclidean building case, at the infinitesimal geometry:

(i) The visual boundary  $\partial_{\infty} X$  of a model space  $X$ , equipped with the Tits metric  $\angle_{\text{Tits}}$ , has a natural structure of a spherical building; we will refer to this spherical building as the *Tits boundary*  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  of  $X$ . The Weyl group of  $X$  is canonically isomorphic to the Weyl group of  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$ ; the dimension of  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  equals  $\text{rank}(X) - 1$ . The euclidean Weyl chamber  $\Delta$  of  $X$  is canonically isometric to the complete euclidean cone over  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . If  $X$  is a symmetric space then the building  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  is always thick, while if  $X$  is a euclidean building then  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  is thick provided that  $X$  is thick. We will say that the model space  $X$  is of *type*  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . The chamber  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  determines the Coxeter complex  $(F_{\text{mod}}, W_{\text{aff}})$  of  $X$  if  $W_{\text{aff}}$  acts transitively on  $F_{\text{mod}}$  (which is the case of symmetric spaces and their asymptotic cones); in general,  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  determines  $F_{\text{mod}}$  and the Weyl group  $W$ .

(ii) In the same vein, for each euclidean building  $X$  and each point  $x \in X$ , the space of directions  $\Sigma_x X$ , equipped with the angle metric  $\angle_x$ , has a natural structure of a spherical building of the *same type*  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ , equivalently, with the *same associated Coxeter complex*  $(a_{\text{mod}}, W)$  as  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$ . Note that in general the spherical building  $\Sigma_x X$  is *not thick* (for instance if  $X$  is a discrete euclidean building and  $x$  is not a vertex.)

We denote by  $\theta: \partial_{\text{Tits}} X \rightarrow \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\theta_x: \Sigma_x X \rightarrow \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  the natural type maps, and by

$$\log_x: \partial_{\text{Tits}} X \rightarrow \Sigma_x X$$

the natural 1–Lipschitz *logarithm* map, sending an ideal point  $\xi$  to the direction  $\overrightarrow{x\xi}$ . This map sends faces isometrically onto faces and satisfies

$$\theta = \theta_x \circ \log_x.$$

(ii') If  $X$  is a symmetric space, then the spaces of directions  $\Sigma_x X$  are unit spheres and the logarithm maps  $\log_x$  are bijective and homeomorphisms with respect to the visual topology on  $\partial_\infty X$ . One can pull back the Tits metric and the spherical building structure to  $\Sigma_x X$  and then also speak of simplices, chambers, apartments etc in  $\Sigma_x X$ .

Along with these spherical buildings associated to  $X$ , we have the *flag spaces at infinity*  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X = \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  and the spaces  $\text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\Sigma_x X)$  of *infinitesimal flags*; see Section 2.4. The visual topology on  $\partial_\infty X$  induces visual topologies on the flag spaces at infinity. (This is emphasized by the notation  $\text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  instead of  $\text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\text{Tits}} X)$ .)

For a type  $\bar{\xi} \in \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ , the natural identification

$$\text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X) \cong \theta^{-1}(\bar{\xi}) \subset \partial_\infty X,$$

which assigns to a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplex the point of type  $\bar{\xi}$  in its interior, is a topological embedding. The infinitesimal flag spaces are discrete in the euclidean building case, while in the symmetric space case, they inherit natural (manifold) topologies from the unit tangent spheres. In the symmetric space case, these flag spaces at infinity are *flag manifolds*;  $\text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  is naturally homeomorphic to the (generalized partial) flag manifold  $G/P$ , where  $G = \text{Isom}_o(X)$  and  $P$  is a parabolic subgroup stabilizing a simplex of type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  in  $\partial_\infty X$ . The infinitesimal flag manifolds are homeomorphic to the flag manifolds at infinity of the corresponding types.

A spherical join splitting  $\sigma_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}^1 \circ \sigma_{\text{mod}}^2$  of the model chamber induces *splittings* of all model spaces  $X$  of type  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  as products

$$X = X_1 \times X_2$$

of model spaces  $X_i$  of types  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^i$ ; compare Section 2.4.

If  $xy \subset X$  is a nondegenerate segment, then we call  $\theta(\overrightarrow{xy})$  its *type*. Similarly, an oriented geodesic  $l \subset X$  is said to have *type*  $\theta(l(+\infty))$ .

A nondegenerate segment  $xy$  or a pair  $(x, y)$  of distinct points is called  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular or  $\Theta$ -regular, respectively, if its direction  $\vec{xy}$  is. In this case, we define its  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -direction  $\tau(xy)$  at  $x$  as the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  face  $\tau(\vec{xy}) \subset \Sigma_x X$ ; then  $\vec{xy} \in \text{ost}(\tau(xy))$ . Analogously, we denote by  $\tau_{\pm}(zw)$  the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -direction of a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -regular segment  $zw$ .

We denote by

$$\text{Isom}_{\theta}(X) < \text{Isom}(X)$$

the subgroup of *type-preserving* isometries, ie isometries which preserve the types of segments and ideal boundary points. Note that  $\text{Isom}_{\theta}(X)$  has finite index in  $\text{Isom}(X)$ , because  $X$  has no flat factor.

Since there is a unique geodesic segment connecting any two points in  $X$ , we can identify the space of oriented segments in  $X$  with the space  $X \times X$ , equipped with the product topology. We observe that  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity is an *open* condition for oriented segments, because the type of a segment varies continuously with it.

The phenomenon of *angle rigidity* is specific to euclidean buildings; see [13, Section 4.1]. In the case of symmetric spaces, one only encounters it at infinity, in the Tits boundary. It is useful to keep in mind the following basic consequences of angle rigidity.

Two nondegenerate segments  $xy_1, xy_2 \subset X$  with the same initial point initially span a flat triangle, ie there exist points  $x \neq y'_i \in xy_i$  such that the geodesic triangle  $\Delta(x, y'_1, y'_2)$  can be filled in by a flat triangle. In particular, if the initial directions of the segments agree, ie  $\angle_x(y_1, y_2) = 0$ , then the segments initially agree, ie  $xy_1 \cap xy_2$  is a nondegenerate segment.

More is true: For any ray  $x\eta_1$  and any nondegenerate segment  $xy_2$  with the same initial point there exists a point  $x \neq y'_2 \in xy_2$  such that the ideal triangle  $\Delta(x, \eta_1, y'_2)$  can be filled in by a flat half-strip. Furthermore,  $xy'_2$  can be extended to a ray  $x\eta'_2$  such that the ideal hinge  $\Delta(x, \eta_1, \eta'_2)$  can be filled in by a flat sector.

We return to the discussion of model spaces in general.

The logarithm maps send stars *onto* stars:

**Lemma 2.9** For each point  $x \in X$  and simplex  $\tau \subset \partial_{\infty} X$ ,

$$\log_x \text{st}(\tau) = \text{st}(\log_x \tau), \quad \log_x \text{ost}(\tau) = \text{ost}(\log_x \tau).$$

**Proof** In the symmetric space case, the assertion is tautological, since the logarithm maps are homeomorphisms.

In the euclidean building case, the assertion is a consequence of angle rigidity. Only the surjectivity requires an argument.

Let  $v = \vec{xy}_2 \in \text{st}(\log_x \tau)$ , and let  $\eta_1 \in \text{int}(\tau)$ . According to our discussion of angle rigidity, there exists  $\eta_2 \in \partial_\infty X$  such that  $\vec{x\eta}_2 = v$  and the ideal hinge  $\Delta(x, \eta_1, \eta_2)$  can be filled in by a flat sector. This means that  $\angle_x(\eta_1, \eta_2) = \angle_{\text{Tits}}(\eta_1, \eta_2)$  and the restriction of  $\log_x$  to the arc  $\eta_1\eta_2$  is an isometric embedding. Since logarithm maps restrict to isometries on simplices, and since  $\vec{x\eta}_1$  and  $v = \vec{x\eta}_2$  are contained in one chamber, it follows that also  $\eta_1\eta_2$  must be contained in one chamber, ie  $\eta_2 \in \text{st}(\tau)$ . This shows the assertion for closed stars.

The assertion for open stars follows, because logarithm maps are type-preserving.  $\square$

Each apartment  $a \subset \partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  is the ideal boundary of a unique maximal flat  $F \subset X$ . More generally, each (isometrically embedded) unit sphere  $s \subset \partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  is the ideal boundary of a flat  $f \subset X$ . If  $s$  is not an apartment, then the flat  $f$  is not maximal and not unique. If the sphere  $s$  is singular, then also the flat  $f$  is singular, ie is the intersection of some maximal flats in  $X$ .

**Parallel sets in model spaces and spherical joins at infinity** One defines the *parallel set*  $P(s) \subset X$  of a unit singular sphere  $s \subset \partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  as the union of the (parallel) flats with ideal boundary  $s$ . Parallel sets are totally geodesic subspaces or euclidean subbuildings, depending on whichever  $X$  is, and as such they carry themselves natural structures as symmetric spaces or euclidean buildings with the same associated Coxeter complex and of the same type  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  as  $X$ .

As a consequence, geodesic segments in parallel sets are extendible to complete geodesics, and tangent directions to parallel sets are represented by segments in the parallel set.

However, parallel sets are not model spaces in our sense, because they have flat factors. The parallel set  $P(s)$  splits isometrically as

$$(2-8) \quad P(s) \cong f \times \text{CS}(s),$$

where the slices  $f \times \text{pt}$  are the flats with ideal boundary sphere  $s$ , and the *cross-section*  $\text{CS}(s)$  is a symmetric space or euclidean building with corank  $\dim(f) = \dim(s) + 1$ , and

$$\text{rank}(X) = \dim(f) + \text{rank}(\text{CS}(s)).$$

The visual boundary of  $P(s)$  is (underlying) the subbuilding  $\mathcal{B}_{\partial_{\text{Tits}}X}(s)$  of  $\partial_{\text{Tits}}X$  associated to the sphere  $s$ ,

$$\partial_{\text{Tits}}P(s) = \mathcal{B}_{\partial_{\text{Tits}}X}(s).$$

Accordingly, there is the natural spherical join decomposition

$$\partial_{\text{Tits}}P(s) \cong s \circ \partial_{\text{Tits}}\text{CS}(s),$$

where  $\partial_{\text{Tits}}\text{CS}(s)$  is canonically identified with the link  $\Sigma_s(\partial_{\text{Tits}}X)$  of  $s$  in  $\partial_{\text{Tits}}X$ ; compare (2-5).

Let  $\tau_{\pm} \subset s$  be a pair of opposite simplices spanning  $s$ , ie  $s = s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ . The subset  $\text{ost}(\tau_+) \subset P(s)$  is open in  $\partial_{\infty}X$  with respect to the Tits topology, but in general not with respect to the visual topology. However:

**Lemma 2.10**  *$\text{ost}(\tau_+)$  is open in  $\partial_{\infty}P(s)$  also with respect to the visual topology.*

**Proof** Let  $\xi_+ \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$ , and let  $\xi_- \in \text{ost}(\tau_-)$  be an antipode. Any ideal point  $\eta_+ \in \partial_{\infty}P(s)$  sufficiently close to  $\xi_+$  is almost opposite to  $\xi_-$  because of the lower semicontinuity of the Tits metric with respect to the visual topology. Lemma 2.6 then implies that  $\eta_+ \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$ . □

As for the visual boundary, we have an analogous description and splitting of the spaces of directions of parallel sets as subbuildings of the spaces of directions of  $X$ . (In the symmetric space case, this refers to the spherical building structures on the spaces of directions pulled back from the visual boundary by the logarithm maps, and is tautological.)

**Lemma 2.11** *For  $x \in P$ ,*

$$\Sigma_x P = \mathcal{B}_{\Sigma_x X}(\log_x s).$$

**Proof** We only need to consider the case when  $X$  is a euclidean building.

Every direction in  $\Sigma_x P$  is tangent to a maximal flat  $F \subset P$  through  $x$ . Since the apartment  $\partial_{\infty}F \subset \partial_{\infty}P$  contains the sphere  $s$ , the apartment  $\Sigma_x F \subset \Sigma_x P$  contains the sphere  $\log_x s$ . Therefore,

$$v \in \Sigma_x F \subset \mathcal{B}_{\Sigma_x X}(\log_x s)$$

and, hence,

$$\Sigma_x P \subset \mathcal{B}_{\Sigma_x X}(\log_x s).$$

Conversely, let  $\tau_{\pm} \subset s$  be a pair of opposite simplices spanning  $s$ , ie  $s = s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ . Since

$$\partial_{\text{Tits}}(P(s)) = \mathcal{B}_{\partial_{\text{Tits}}X}(s) \supset \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}),$$

it follows, using Lemma 2.9, that

$$\text{st}(\log_x \tau_{\pm}) = \log_x \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}) \subset \Sigma_x P.$$

Since  $\Sigma_x P$  is a subbuilding of  $\Sigma_x X$ , it must therefore contain all apartments containing  $\log_x s$ . This shows the reverse inclusion. □

Note that for spheres  $s \subset s' \subset \partial_{\text{Tits}}X$ , we have that  $P(s) \supset P(s')$ . If  $s$  is not singular and  $s'$  is the unique smallest singular sphere containing  $s$ , then there is equality.

For a flat  $f \subset X$ , we define its parallel set as  $P(f) := P(\partial_{\infty} f)$ ; it is the union of all flats parallel to  $f$ . For flats  $f \subset f'$ , it holds that  $P(f) \supset P(f')$ . Again, if  $f$  is not singular and  $f'$  is the unique smallest singular flat containing  $f$ , then equality holds.

When  $s = s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ , we will use the notation  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  for  $P(s)$ . In this notation we emphasize that we regard  $P$  as a parallel set together with a choice of an ordered pair  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  of antipodal simplices in  $\partial_{\infty} P$ . One can think of this choice as a higher-rank analogue of an orientation of a geodesic. We will say that the parallel set  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  has *type*  $\theta(\tau_+)$ .

Each parallel set of a flat (or a sphere at infinity) can also be represented as the parallel set of a geodesic line. Namely,  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+) = P(l)$  for every line  $l$  with  $l(\pm\infty) \in \text{int}(\tau_{\pm})$ .

Two ideal points  $\xi_{\pm} \in \partial_{\infty} X$  are opposite, ie  $\angle_{\text{Tits}}(\xi_-, \xi_+) = \pi$ , if and only if there exists a geodesic line  $l \subset X$  asymptotic to  $\xi_{\pm}$ , ie  $l(\pm\infty) = \xi_{\pm}$ . (Note that this is not true for general CAT(0) spaces.) Two simplices  $\tau_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  are opposite if and only if there exists a line  $l \subset X$  such that  $l(\pm\infty) \in \text{int}(\tau_{\pm})$ .

**Definition 2.12** (*x*-opposite) We say that two (opposite) simplices  $\tau_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  are *x*-opposite if the simplices  $\log_x \tau_{\pm} \subset \Sigma_x X$  are opposite.

If  $X$  is a symmetric space, this condition means that the differential  $ds_x$  of the point reflection at  $x$  (Cartan involution)  $s_x: X \rightarrow X$  swaps  $\tau_+$  and  $\tau_-$ . In this case, for every simplex there exists a unique *x*-opposite simplex.

**Lemma 2.13** *Two opposite simplices  $\tau_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  are *x*-opposite if and only if  $x \in P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ .*

**Proof** If the simplices  $\log_x \tau_{\pm} \subset \Sigma_x X$  are opposite, then they contain a pair of opposite directions  $\log_x \xi_{\pm} \in \text{int}(\log_x \tau_{\pm})$ . Hence, there exists a pair of antipodes  $\xi_{\pm} \in \text{int}(\tau_{\pm})$  such that  $\xi_-x\xi_+$  is a geodesic line. It follows that  $x \in P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ . The converse is clear.  $\square$

A spherical join splitting  $\sigma_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}^1 \circ \sigma_{\text{mod}}^2$  induces *splittings* of all model spaces  $X$  of type  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$  as metric products  $X = X_1 \times X_2$  of model spaces  $X_i$  of types  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^i$ .

**Cones** For a subset  $A \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  and a point  $x \in X$  we let  $V(x, A) \subset X$  be the complete *cone* over  $A$  with tip  $x$ , ie the union of the geodesic rays  $x\xi$  for all  $\xi \in A$ . If  $A$  is closed with respect to the visual topology on  $\partial_{\infty} X$ , then the subset  $V(x, A)$  is closed in  $X$ . The cones  $V(x, A)$ , in general, are not isometric to (euclidean) metric cones. However, if  $A$  is contained in an apartment in  $\partial_{\infty} X$ , then  $V(x, A)$  is canonically isometric to the complete euclidean cone over the set  $A$ , equipped with the Tits metric.

In the special case when  $\tau \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  is a simplex, the cone  $V(x, \tau)$  is called a *euclidean Weyl sector* in  $X$ , and if  $\sigma \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  is a chamber, then  $V(x, \sigma)$  is called a *euclidean Weyl chamber*. The *open* sector  $\text{int}(V(x, \tau)) := V(x, \text{int}(\tau)) - \{x\}$  is the subset of points where  $V(x, \tau)$  is locally isometric to euclidean space (of dimension  $\dim \tau + 1$ ). It is the *interior* of the sector  $V(x, \tau)$  inside any minimal singular flat containing it.

For a simplex  $\tau \subset \partial_{\infty} X$ , the cone  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  is called a *Weyl cone* in  $X$ . It is the union of the euclidean Weyl chambers  $V(x, \sigma)$  over all chambers  $\sigma \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  containing  $\tau$  as a face. If  $\hat{\tau}$  is a simplex  $x$ -opposite to  $\tau$ , then

$$V(x, \text{st}(\tau)) \subset P(\hat{\tau}, \tau).$$

We call such a parallel set an *ambient parallel set* for the Weyl cone. We will refer to the subset  $V(x, \text{ost}(\tau)) - \{x\} \subset V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  as the *open* Weyl cone. It is the subset of points  $y \in V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  whose spaces of directions  $\Sigma_y V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  are spherical buildings.

Another class of cones which we will use are the  $\Theta$ -cones  $V(x, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau))$ .

## 2.6 Trees

We recall the geometric notion of tree:

**Definition 2.14** (metric tree) A *metric tree* is a 0-hyperbolic geodesic metric space.

Note that euclidean buildings of rank one are metric trees.

We will use the following fact:

**Lemma 2.15** *Every path metric space bilipschitz homeomorphic to a metric tree is itself a metric tree.*

**Proof** Suppose that  $(T, d)$  is a metric tree, and that  $d'$  is another path metric on  $T$  which is bilipschitz equivalent to  $d$ . Any two points in  $T$  are connected by an embedded path, and this path is unique up to reparametrization. Moreover, it is  $d$ -rectifiable and therefore  $d'$ -rectifiable. Any nonembedded path with the same endpoints is at least as  $d'$ -long, because its image contains the image of the embedded connecting path. It follows that  $d'$ -geodesics coincide, up to reparametrization, with  $d$ -geodesics. Thus, any two points in  $T$  can be connected by a unique  $d'$ -geodesic and  $d'$ -geodesic triangles are tripods.  $\square$

## 2.7 Ultralimits

We let  $\omega$  denote a *nonprincipal ultrafilter* on the set  $\mathbb{N}$  of natural numbers. For a map  $h: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow K$  from  $\mathbb{N}$  to a compact Hausdorff space, one defines the *ultralimit*,

$$\omega\text{-}\lim h(n) = k \in K,$$

as the unique point  $k \in K$  such that for every neighborhood  $U$  of  $k$  in  $K$ , the subset  $h^{-1}(U)$  belongs to  $\omega$ .

Consider a sequence of pointed metric spaces  $(X_n, \star_n)$  parametrized by  $\mathbb{N}$ ; we use the notation  $\text{dist}_{X_n}$  for the metric on  $X_n$ . The *ultralimit*

$$(X_\omega, \star_\omega) = \omega\text{-}\lim_n (X_n, \star_n)$$

of the sequence of pointed metric spaces  $(X_n, \star_n)$  is a pointed metric space defined as follows: Define a pseudodistance  $\text{dist}_\omega$  on the product space  $\prod_{n \in \mathbb{N}} X_n$  by the formula

$$\text{dist}_\omega((x_n), (y_n)) := \omega\text{-}\lim(n \mapsto \text{dist}_{X_n}(x_n, y_n)),$$

where we take the *ultralimit* of the function  $n \mapsto \text{dist}_{X_n}(x_n, y_n)$  with values in the compact space  $[0, \infty]$ . The function  $\text{dist}_\omega$  takes values in  $[0, \infty]$ . In order to convert this function to a metric, we first consider the subset

$$X_\omega^o \subset \prod_{n \in \mathbb{N}} X_n$$

consisting of sequences  $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  such that

$$\text{dist}_\omega((x_n), (\star_n)) < \infty.$$



Then  $\text{dist}_\omega$  restricted to  $X_\omega^o \times X_\omega^o$  takes only finite values. Lastly, take the quotient of  $X_\omega^o$ , where we identify points with zero  $\text{dist}_\omega$ -distance. The result is the ultralimit  $X_\omega$ ; we retain the notation  $\text{dist}_\omega$  for the projection of the pseudodistance from  $X_\omega^o$  to  $X_\omega$ . Points  $x_\omega \in X_\omega$  are thus represented by sequences  $(x_n)$  of points  $x_n \in X_n$ ; abusing notation, we will sometimes write  $x_\omega = (x_n)$ . The natural basepoint of  $X_\omega$  is  $\star_\omega = (\star_n)$ .

The ultralimits that we will be using in the paper are of very special kind. They are defined by starting with a fixed metric space  $(X, \text{dist}_X)$ , taking sequences of basepoints  $\star_n \in X$  and of scale factors  $\lambda_n > 0$  converging to 0, and then setting

$$X_n = X, \quad \text{dist}_{X_n} = \lambda_n \text{dist}_X.$$

Such ultralimits are called *asymptotic cones* of  $(X, \text{dist}_X)$ . By abusing the notation, we will abbreviate  $(X, \lambda_n \text{dist}_X)$  to  $\lambda_n X$ .

We will need a basic construction, which relates quasiisometries and asymptotic cones. Suppose that  $(Y_n, \star'_n)$  and  $(X_n, \star_n)$  are sequences of pointed metric spaces and that

$$f_n: Y_n \rightarrow X_n$$

are  $(L, A)$ -quasiisometric embeddings such that

$$\omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n \text{dist}_{X_n}(f_n(\star'_n), \star_n) < +\infty.$$

Suppose that  $(\lambda_n)$  is a sequence of positive numbers satisfying  $\omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n = 0$  and consider the ultralimits

$$(Y_\omega, \star'_\omega) = \omega\text{-lim}(Y_n, \lambda_n \text{dist}_{Y_n}, \star'_n), \quad (X_\omega, \star_\omega) = \omega\text{-lim}(X_n, \lambda_n \text{dist}_{X_n}, \star_n).$$

Then the induced map

$$f_\omega: Y_\omega \rightarrow X_\omega, \quad f_\omega((y_n)) = (f_n(y_n)),$$

is well defined. The map  $f_\omega$  is called the *ultralimit* of the sequence of maps  $(f_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ .

Since, with respect to the rescaled metrics, the maps  $f_n$  are  $(L, \lambda_n A)$ -quasiisometric embeddings, their ultralimit is an  $(L, 0)$ -quasiisometric embedding:

**Lemma 2.16** *The map  $f_\omega$  is an  $L$ -bilipschitz embedding:*

$$L^{-1} \text{dist}_{Y_\omega}(y_\omega, y'_\omega) \leq \text{dist}_{X_\omega}(f_\omega(y_\omega), f_\omega(y'_\omega)) \leq L \text{dist}_{Y_\omega}(y_\omega, y'_\omega).$$

We will use this lemma primarily to conclude that the ultralimit of a sequence of uniform quasigeodesics in a symmetric space (or a building) is a bilipschitz path in the asymptotic cone, while ultralimits of sequences of flats are flats.

The following construction is a special case of the lemma. Suppose that  $(X_n, \star_n)$  is a sequence of pointed metric spaces with ultralimit  $(X_\omega, \star_\omega) = \omega\text{-lim}(X_n, \star_n)$  and that  $Y_n \subset X_n$  are subsets such that

$$\omega\text{-lim dist}_{X_n}(\star_n, Y_n) < +\infty.$$

Define the *ultralimit of the sequence of subsets*  $Y_n$ ,

$$Y_\omega = \omega\text{-lim } Y_n \subset X_\omega,$$

as the subset consisting of all points  $y_\omega \in X_\omega$  represented by sequences  $(y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  with  $y_n \in Y_n$ . Alternatively, one can describe  $Y_\omega$  as follows: for any sequence of basepoints  $\star'_n \in Y_n$  with  $\omega\text{-lim dist}_{X_n}(\star_n, \star'_n) < +\infty$ , there is a natural isometric embedding of ultralimits

$$\omega\text{-lim}(Y_n, \star'_n) \rightarrow \omega\text{-lim}(X_n, \star'_n) = (X_\omega, \star'_\omega),$$

where  $\text{dist}_{Y_n}$  is the restriction of the distance function from  $X_n$  to  $Y_n$ , and the image of the embedding coincides with  $Y_\omega$ .

Since the ultralimit of any sequence of metric spaces is a *complete* metric space (see Lemma I.5.53 in [2] or Proposition 7.44 in [4]), it follows that the ultralimit of any sequence of subspaces is *closed*.

### 3 Geometry of CAT(0) model spaces

Throughout this chapter,  $X$  denotes a model space. When parts of the discussion apply only to euclidean buildings or symmetric spaces, this will be indicated explicitly.

#### 3.1 Regularity and coarse regularity

The regularity of pairs of points—equivalently, of segments—has been defined in Section 2.5.

We call a sequence  $(x_n)$  in  $X$   $\Theta$ -regular if all pairs  $(x_m, x_n)$  for  $m < n$  are  $\Theta$ -regular; a path  $c: I \rightarrow X$  is  $\Theta$ -regular if all pairs of points  $(c(t_1), c(t_2))$  for  $t_1 < t_2$  are  $\Theta$ -regular. When we do not want to specify  $\Theta$ , we say that a sequence  $(x_n)$  or a path  $c$  is *uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular* if it is  $\Theta$ -regular for some  $\Theta$ .

A weaker version of uniform regularity is *regularity*: a sequence  $(x_n)$  (resp. path  $c$ ) is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular if all pairs  $(x_m, x_n)$  for  $m < n$  are  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular (resp. pairs of points  $(c(t_1), c(t_2))$  for  $t_1 < t_2$ ) are  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular. Note that  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity does *not* imply local uniform  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity.

If  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\Theta$  are  $\iota$ -invariant, then the order of the points does not matter: A segment is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ - or  $\Theta$ -regular if and only if the reversely oriented segment is. Freed of the orientation issues, we then say that a subset  $R \subset X$  is  $\Theta$ -regular if any pair of distinct points in  $R$  is  $\Theta$ -regular and, more generally, that a map  $Z \rightarrow X$  into  $X$  is  $\Theta$ -regular if it sends any pair of distinct points in  $Z$  to a  $\Theta$ -regular pair of points in  $X$ . In the same way, we define the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity of subsets of and maps into  $X$ . Note that regular maps are necessarily injective, and their images are regular subsets. Conversely, injective maps into regular subsets are regular.

A natural way to *coarsify* the notion of regularity is as follows.

Let  $B \geq 0$ . We say that a pair  $(x, y)$  of (not necessarily distinct) points is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular if it is oriented  $B$ -close to some  $\Theta$ -regular pair of points  $(x', y')$ , ie  $d(x, x') \leq B$  and  $d(y, y') \leq B$ . Since we are working in a CAT(0) setting, this is equivalent to the property that the segment  $xy$  is oriented  $B$ -Hausdorff-close to the  $\Theta$ -regular segment  $x'y'$ , and we say also that the segment  $xy$  is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular.

We say that a sequence  $(x_n)$  in  $X$  is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular if all pairs  $(x_m, x_n)$  for  $m < n$  are  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular. Similarly, we say that a (not necessarily continuous) path  $p: I \rightarrow X$  is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular if, for every subinterval  $[a', b'] \subset I$ , the segment  $p(a')p(b')$  is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular. We will primarily use this definition in the case of quasigeodesics (finite or infinite).

If  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\Theta$  are  $\iota$ -invariant, then we say that a subset of  $X$  is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular if every pair of points in the subset has this property and, more generally, that a map into  $X$  is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular if it sends any pair of points to a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular pair of points in  $X$ . Note that the images of  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular maps are  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular subsets. We say that the subset or map is (coarsely)  $\Theta$ -regular if it is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular for some constant  $B$ . We say that an isometric group action on  $X$  is  $\Theta$ -regular if some (every) orbit map is.

A path, map, subset or action is said to be *uniformly*  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular if it is  $\Theta$ -regular for some  $\Theta$ .

Let  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\Theta$  again be unrestricted.

Here is a useful weakening of the notion of coarse uniform regularity:

**Definition 3.1** (asymptotically regular sequence; see [10, Definition 5.1]) We say that a sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  in  $X$  is *asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular* if for some (any) basepoint  $x \in X$  the set of accumulation points of the sequence of direction types  $\theta(\overrightarrow{xx_n}) \in \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  is contained in  $\Theta$ , equivalently, if the set of accumulation points of the sequence of  $\Delta$ -lengths  $d_\Delta(x, x_n) \in V_{\text{mod}}$  is contained in  $\Theta \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}} \cong \partial_\infty V_{\text{mod}}$ .

A sequence in  $X$  is called *asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular* if it is asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular for some  $\Theta$ .

- Lemma 3.2**
- (i) *The set of accumulation points in  $\partial_\infty X$  of an asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  is contained in the  $\Theta$ -regular part  $\theta^{-1}(\Theta) \subset \partial_\infty X$  of the ideal boundary. If  $X$  is locally compact, then the converse holds as well.*
  - (ii) *If  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  is an asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular sequence, then for every point  $x \in X$  the segments  $xx_n$  are  $\Theta'$ -regular for all sufficiently large  $n$ .*
  - (iii)  *$(\Theta, B)$ -regular sequences in  $X$  are asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular.*

**Proof** The first assertion of part (i) is clear. For the second, suppose that  $X$  is locally compact and consider a sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  which accumulates at a subset of  $\theta^{-1}(\Theta) \subset \partial_\infty X$  and is such that, for a point  $x \in X$ , after passing to a subsequence, the direction types  $\theta(\overrightarrow{xx_n})$  converge,  $\theta(\overrightarrow{xx_n}) \rightarrow \bar{\xi} \in \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . After passing to a subsequence again, we may assume that also the sequence  $(x_n)$  converges at infinity:  $x_n \rightarrow \xi \in \partial_\infty X$ . It follows that  $\bar{\xi} = \theta(\xi) \in \Theta$ . Thus,  $(x_n)$  is asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular.

Parts (ii) and (iii) follow from the triangle inequality for  $\Delta$ -lengths (2-7). □

**Definition 3.3** (asymptotically regular subset) We call a subset  $R \subset X$  *asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular* if all diverging sequences in  $R$  have this property.

We suppose again that  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\Theta$  are  $\iota$ -invariant and consider the concepts introduced so far in the context of discrete subgroups.

**Definition 3.4** (asymptotically regular subgroup and action) We say that a discrete subgroup  $\Gamma < \text{Isom}(X)$  is *asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular* if its orbits in  $X$  have this property. More generally, we call a properly discontinuous isometric action  $\Gamma \curvearrowright X$  of a discrete group  $\Gamma$  on  $X$  *asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular* if its orbits in  $X$  have this property.

- Remark 3** (i) If  $X$  is locally compact, then the asymptotic uniform  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity of  $\Gamma$  is equivalent to the property that the limit set of  $\Gamma$  is contained in the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular part of the visual boundary,  $\theta(\Lambda(\Gamma)) \subset \text{ost}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ ; see Lemma 3.2 and [10, Definition 5.1]. We recall that the limit set  $\Lambda(\Gamma) \subset \partial_\infty X$  of  $\Gamma$  is the accumulation set of a  $\Gamma$ -orbit  $\Gamma x \subset X$ .
- (ii) Coarsely  $\Theta$ -regular actions are also asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular. Asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular actions are coarsely  $\Theta'$ -regular.

The next observations relate (coarse) regularity to regularity.

**Lemma 3.5** (long coarsely regular implies regular) *There is a constant  $c = c(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$  such that every  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular segment of length  $\geq cB$  is  $\Theta'$ -regular.*

**Proof** Suppose that the segment  $xy$  is oriented  $B$ -close to the  $\Theta$ -regular segment  $x'y'$  and define

$$D := \max(d(x, y), d(x', y')).$$

The triangle inequality for  $\Delta$ -lengths (2-7) yields that  $|d_\Delta(x, y) - d_\Delta(x', y')| \leq 2B$ . It follows that the angular distance

$$\alpha = \angle(\theta(xy), \theta(x'y'))$$

between the types of the segments  $xy$  and  $x'y'$  satisfies

$$\sin\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right) \leq \frac{B}{D} \leq \frac{B}{d(x, y) - 2B}.$$

The lemma follows. □

We note that long chords of (coarsely) regular quasigeodesics are uniformly regular:

**Lemma 3.6** *With the constant  $c = c(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$  from Lemma 3.5, the following holds:*

*Suppose that  $q: I \rightarrow X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic. Then, for every subinterval  $[a', b'] \subset I$  with length  $\geq L(A + cB)$ , the segment  $q(a')q(b')$  is  $\Theta'$ -regular.*

**Proof** The segment  $q(a')q(b')$  has length  $\geq cB$  and is therefore  $\Theta'$ -regular by Lemma 3.5. □

Similarly, one obtains the same conclusion for the projections of (coarsely) regular quasigeodesics to nearby parallel sets. Let  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  be a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set, and let  $\bar{q} = \pi_P \circ q$  denote the nearest-point projection of the path  $q$  to  $P$ .

**Lemma 3.7** *With the constant  $c = c(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$  from Lemma 3.5, the following holds:*

*Suppose that  $q: I \rightarrow X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic such that  $q(I) \subset \bar{N}_D(P)$ . Then, for every subinterval  $[a', b'] \subset I$  with length  $\geq L(A + c(B + D))$ , the segment  $\bar{q}(a')\bar{q}(b') \subset P$  is  $\Theta'$ -regular.*

**Proof** The projected quasigeodesic  $\bar{q}: I \rightarrow P$  is  $(\Theta, B + D)$ -regular. (Its quasi-isometry constants are irrelevant.) As in the proof of the previous lemma we note that the segment  $\bar{q}(a')\bar{q}(b')$  has length  $\geq c(B + D)$  and is therefore  $\Theta'$ -regular by Lemma 3.5. □

### 3.2 Longitudinality and coarse longitudinality

Longitudinality is a property of segments and directions in a parallel set, which is “oriented” by the choice of a pair of opposite simplices spanning the singular sphere factor of its visual boundary. It means that the segments or directions point towards the open stars of these simplices. To prepare the precise definition, we first need an observation which relates the property of pointing to these stars for directions, segments and rays.

Let  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+) \subset X$  be a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set.

**Lemma 3.8** *Let  $xy \subset P$  be a nondegenerate segment and let  $x\xi_+ \subset P$  be a ray.*

- (i) *If  $\bar{x}\bar{y} \in \text{st}(\log_x \tau_+)$ , then  $y \in V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$ . If  $\bar{x}\bar{y} \in \text{ost}(\log_x \tau_+)$ , then  $y \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+))$ . Moreover,  $\bar{x}\bar{y} \in \text{st}(\log_x \tau_+)$  if and only if  $\bar{x}\bar{y} \in \text{st}(\log_y \tau_-)$ .*
- (ii) *If  $x\bar{\xi}_+ \in \text{st}(\log_x \tau_+)$ , then  $\xi_+ \in \text{st}(\tau_+)$ . If  $x\bar{\xi}_+ \in \text{ost}(\log_x \tau_+)$ , then  $\xi_+ \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$ .*

**Proof** (ii) The direction  $\bar{x}\bar{\xi}_+$  has an antipode  $v_- \in \text{st}(\log_x \tau_-)$ . By Lemma 2.9,  $v_-$  is the initial direction  $v_- = x\bar{\xi}_-$  of a ray  $x\xi_- \subset P$  with  $\xi_- \in \text{st}(\tau_-)$ . Since  $\xi_{\pm}$  are antipodes, Lemma 2.5 implies that  $\xi_+ \in \text{st}(\tau_+)$ . If  $\bar{x}\bar{\xi}_+ \in \text{ost}(\log_x \tau_+)$ , then  $\xi_+ \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$  because  $\theta(\bar{x}\bar{\xi}_+) = \theta(\xi_+)$ .

(i) The corresponding assertions for  $xy$  follow, because segments in  $P$  extend to rays in  $P$ . Moreover, as in the proof of (ii), if  $\vec{x}\vec{y} \in \text{st}(\log_x \tau_+)$ , then  $xy$  is contained in a ray  $\xi_-y$  with  $\xi_- \in \text{st}(\tau_-)$  and hence  $\vec{y}\vec{x} \in \text{st}(\log_y \tau_-)$ .  $\square$

**Remark 4** Part (ii) of the last lemma yields a partial converse to Lemma 2.5: it implies

$$\log_x^{-1}(\text{st}(\log_x \tau_+)) \cap \partial_\infty P = \text{st}(\tau_+).$$

The lemma motivates the following notion:

**Definition 3.9** (longitudinal directions and segments in parallel sets) At a point  $x \in P$ , the directions in  $\text{ost}(\log_x \tau_+)$  are called *longitudinal* and the directions in  $\text{ost}(\log_x \tau_-)$  *antlongitudinal*. Moreover,  $\Theta$ -regular (anti)longitudinal directions are called  $\Theta$ - (anti)longitudinal. A nondegenerate segment  $xy \subset P$  is called  $(\Theta)$ - (anti)longitudinal if  $\vec{x}\vec{y}$  has this property.

**Remark 5** (i) Longitudinal directions and segments are in particular  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular.

- (ii) A direction is antlongitudinal if and only if some — equivalently, all — opposite directions tangent to  $P$  are longitudinal.
- (iii) A nondegenerate segment is  $(\Theta)$ - (anti)longitudinal if and only if all nondegenerate subsegments are.

We make analogous definitions for paths:

**Definition 3.10** (longitudinal paths in parallel sets) We say that a path  $c: I \rightarrow P$  is  $(\Theta)$ - (anti)longitudinal if all segments  $c(t_1)c(t_2)$  for  $t_1 < t_2$  have this property.

Note that if  $c: I \rightarrow P$  is longitudinal, then  $c(I \cap (t, +\infty)) \subset V(c(t), \text{ost}(\tau_+))$  and  $c(I \cap (-\infty, t)) \subset V(c(t), \text{ost}(\tau_-))$  for  $t \in I$ .

Longitudinal paths are, up to reparametrization, bilipschitz; they become bilipschitz when parametrized by arc length:

**Lemma 3.11** (bounded detours) *There exists a constant  $L = L(\Theta) \geq 1$  such that for every  $\Theta$ -longitudinal path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow P$  it holds that  $L(c) \leq L(\Theta) \cdot d(c(a), c(b))$ .*

**Proof** We choose  $\xi_- \in \tau_-$ . By the radius bound (2-2) for  $\Theta$ , there exists  $\rho < \frac{\pi}{2}$  such that for every  $\Theta$ -longitudinal segment  $xy \subset P$  it holds that  $b_{\xi_-}(y) - b_{\xi_-}(x) \geq d(x, y) \cdot \cos \rho$ . It follows that  $d(c(b), c(a)) \geq b_{\xi_-}(c(b)) - b_{\xi_-}(c(a)) \geq L(c) \cdot \cos \rho$ .  $\square$

In order to be able to speak of openness and closedness of the longitudinally condition, we identify, as before for  $X$ , the space of segments in  $P$  with the space  $P \times P$  of pairs of points, which is equipped with a natural topology.

**Lemma 3.12** (open and closed) *The subset of longitudinal segments in  $P$  is open in the space of all segments in  $P$ , and also closed in the subspace of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular segments.*

**Proof** Let  $xy \subset P$  be  $\Theta$ -longitudinal. Then  $y$  lies in the interior of the cone  $V(x, \text{st}_{\Theta'}(\tau_+))$  and its distance from the boundary of the cone is  $\geq \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta, \Theta') \cdot d(x, y)$  with the constant  $\epsilon_0$  from (2-4). Therefore,  $xy'$  is  $\Theta'$ -longitudinal if  $d(y, y') < \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta, \Theta') \cdot d(x, y)$ . Similarly,  $x'y'$  is  $\Theta''$ -longitudinal if

$$d(x, x') < \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta', \Theta'') \cdot d(x, y').$$

Hence, longitudinally is an open condition for segments in  $P$ .

The uniform estimates show, moreover, that if a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular segment can be arbitrarily well approximated by longitudinal segments, then it is longitudinal itself. So, longitudinally is also a closed condition for  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular segments in  $P$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 3.13** (longitudinally preserved under regular deformation) *A continuous family of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular segments  $x_s y_s \subset P$  for  $0 \leq s \leq 1$  which contains one longitudinal segment consists only of longitudinal segments.*

As we did with regularity, one can also coarsify the notion of longitudinally and call a segment *coarsely longitudinal* if it is oriented Hausdorff-close to a longitudinal segment in the parallel set. The notion of coarse longitudinally then applies to segments and paths which are close to the parallel set but not necessarily contained in it.

The observation that longitudinally is preserved under regular deformation implies that a (coarsely) regular quasigeodesic close to the parallel set must be coarsely longitudinal as soon as some sufficiently long chord of the projected quasigeodesic is longitudinal. In the following lemma, we again use the notation  $\bar{q} = \pi_P \circ q$ .

**Lemma 3.14** (coarsely longitudinal quasigeodesic) *With the constant  $c = c(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$  from Lemma 3.5, the following holds:*

*Suppose that  $q: I \rightarrow X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic such that  $q(I) \subset \bar{N}_D(P)$ . If for some subinterval  $[a', b'] \subset I$  of length  $\geq L(A + c(B + D))$  the  $\Theta'$ -regular segment  $\bar{q}(a')\bar{q}(b') \subset P$  is longitudinal, then the same holds also for all other such subintervals.*



**Proof** We may assume that the quasigeodesic is continuous. The subintervals  $[a', b'] \subset I$  of length  $\geq L(A + c(B + D))$  form a connected (possibly empty) family. That the corresponding segments  $\bar{q}(a')\bar{q}(b') \subset P$  are  $\Theta'$ -regular is due to Lemma 3.7. The assertion therefore follows from Corollary 3.13.  $\square$

### 3.3 Cones

In this section, we consider a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  Weyl cone along with the corresponding  $\Theta$ -cones and an ambient type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set:

$$V_{\Theta} = V(x, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+)) \subset V = V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \subset P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+).$$

If  $X$  is a symmetric space, then  $P$  is determined by  $V$ ; if  $X$  is a euclidean building, it is not.

**Lemma 3.15** (open Weyl cone) *For a point  $x \in P$ , the open Weyl cone*

$$V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$$

*is the interior of  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$  in  $P$ , and  $V(x, \partial \text{st}(\tau_+))$  is its topological boundary.*

**Proof** Let  $y \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$ . Then  $\overrightarrow{xy} \in \text{ost}(\log_x \tau_+)$ . Since  $\text{ost}(\log_x \tau_+)$  is open in  $\Sigma_x X$ , it follows that also  $\overrightarrow{xy'} \in \text{ost}(\log_x \tau_+)$  for every point  $y' \in P$  sufficiently close to  $y$ , and Lemma 3.8 implies that  $y' \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+))$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $y$  lies in the interior of  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$  with respect to  $P$ , and let  $F \subset P$  be a maximal flat through  $x$  and  $y$ . (Such a flat exists because also  $P$  is a euclidean building.) Then  $y$  lies in the interior, with respect to  $F$ , of the finite union of euclidean Weyl chambers  $F \cap V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+)) = V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+) \cap \partial_{\infty} F)$ , and it follows that  $y \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$ .  $\square$

A basic property of Weyl and  $\Theta$ -cones is their convexity. It is deduced from the convexity of stars at infinity (Proposition 2.8):

**Proposition 3.16** (convexity of cones) *The Weyl cone  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$ , the open Weyl cone  $V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$  and the  $\Theta$ -cones  $V(x, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+))$  are convex subsets of  $X$ .*

*More precisely, in the Weyl cone case,  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$  is the intersection of the parallel set  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  and the root type horoballs which are centered at  $\partial_{\infty} P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  and contain  $x$  in their boundary and  $\text{st}(\tau_+)$  in their visual boundary, and  $V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$  is the intersection of the parallel set and the open horoballs.*

**Proof** The assertions for the closed cones have been proven in [10, Propositions 2.14 and 2.18] (see also [12, Proposition 2.10]) in the case of symmetric spaces; the proofs for euclidean buildings are identical and we will omit them. The assertion for the open Weyl cone follows from Lemma 3.15, because it is the interior of  $V$  inside  $P$ . The open Weyl cone is therefore contained in the interior of every horoball  $\text{Hb}_{\zeta,x}$  for which, at infinity,  $\text{st}(\tau_+) \subset \bar{B}(\zeta, \frac{\pi}{2})$ .  $\square$

As a consequence, one obtains (compare [10, Corollary 2.19; 12, Proposition 2.10]):

- Corollary 3.17** (nested cones) (i) If  $x' \in V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$ , then  $V(x', \text{st}(\tau_+)) \subset V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$  and  $V(x', \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x'\} \subset V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$ .  
(ii) If  $x' \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$ , then  $V(x', \text{st}(\tau_+)) \subset V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+))$ .  
(iii) If  $x' \in V(x, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+))$ , then  $V(x', \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+)) \subset V(x, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+))$ .

Longitudinality in the Weyl cone can be defined independently of the ambient parallel set:

**Definition 3.18** (longitudinal directions in Weyl cones) At a point  $y \in V$ , the directions in  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_+)$  are called *longitudinal* and the directions opposite to them *antlongitudinal*.

As before in the case of parallel sets (see Definition 3.9) we call  $\Theta$ -regular (anti)longitudinal directions  $\Theta$ -(anti)longitudinal, and we say that a nondegenerate segment is  $(\Theta)$ -(anti)longitudinal if its (initial) direction has this property. Moreover, we define *longitudinal paths* in Weyl cones as in the parallel set case; see Definition 3.10.

Note that tangent directions to the Weyl cone  $V$  and segments in it are longitudinal in the Weyl cone if and only if they are longitudinal in the ambient parallel set  $P$ .

We next describe the antlongitudinal directions.

- Lemma 3.19** (i) If  $y \in V(x, \partial \text{st}(\tau_+))$ , then  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_-) \cap \Sigma_y V = \emptyset$ .  
(ii) If  $y \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$ , then  $\text{st}(\log_y \tau_-) = \text{st}(\tau_-(yx)) \subset \Sigma_y V$ .

**Proof** (i) Suppose that  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_-) \cap \Sigma_y V \neq \emptyset$ . Since  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_-)$  is open, it must contain a direction which is represented by a segment in  $V$ , ie there exists  $y \neq z \in V \cap V(y, \text{ost}(\tau_-))$ . Hence,  $y \in V(z, \text{ost}(\tau_+))$ , and Corollary 3.17 yields that  $y \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\} = V - V(x, \partial \text{st}(\tau_+))$ , which shows the first assertion.

(ii) If  $y \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$ , then  $xy$  is longitudinal and  $\tau_-(yx) = \log_y \tau_-$ . According to Lemma 3.15,  $y$  lies in the interior of  $V$  with respect to  $P$ , so  $\text{st}(\log_y \tau_-) \subset \Sigma_y P = \Sigma_y V$ . □

**Corollary 3.20** (antilogitudinal directions in Weyl cones) *Antilogitudinal directions in  $y \in V$  exist if and only if  $y \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) - \{x\}$ . In this case, the set of antilogitudinal directions in  $y$  equals  $\text{ost}(\tau_-(yx)) = \text{ost}(\log_y \tau_-)$ .*

**Proof** The space of antilogitudinal directions in  $\Sigma_y V$  equals  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_-) \cap \Sigma_y V$  and is, by its definition, independent of  $P$ . The assertion therefore follows from the lemma. □

### 3.4 Longitudinal convexity of parallel sets

This section prepares the discussion of diamonds. We consider broken geodesic paths in  $X$ .

**Definition 3.21** (straight path) We say that a broken geodesic path  $x_0 x_1 \dots x_k$  in  $X$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -straight if it is piecewise  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular and if at any vertex  $x_i$  for  $0 < i < k$  the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -directions of the adjacent segments are opposite, ie if the simplices  $\tau_\pm(x_i x_{i\pm 1}) \subset \Sigma_{x_i} X$  are opposite. We call the path  $\Theta$ -straight if in addition it is piecewise  $\Theta$ -regular.

Note that if the directions of the adjacent segments themselves are opposite, that is,  $\angle_{x_i}(x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}) = \pi$ , then the broken geodesic path is geodesic.

The definitions carry over to semi- and bi-infinite broken geodesic paths  $x_0 \dots x_k \xi_+$ ,  $\xi_- x_0 \dots x_k$  and  $\xi_- x_0 \dots x_k \xi_+$  for  $\xi_\pm \in \partial_\infty X$ . A finite  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -straight path  $x_0 x_1 \dots x_k$  can always be extended to a bi-infinite  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -straight path  $\xi_- x_0 \dots x_k \xi_+$  with  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -regular ideal endpoints  $\xi_\pm$ .

**Definition 3.22** (longitudinal path) We call a broken geodesic path  $x_0 x_1 \dots x_k$  in a parallel set  $(\Theta)$ -(anti)longitudinal if all subsegments  $x_{i-1} x_i$  have this property.

Longitudinal paths in parallel sets are clearly straight. The next result shows that, conversely, straight paths are longitudinal paths in parallel sets. This is clear when  $X$  is a symmetric space and the parallel set is uniquely determined, but requires an argument when  $X$  is a euclidean building.

**Proposition 3.23** *Each semi-infinite  $\Theta$ -straight path  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k\xi_+$  is contained in the  $\Theta$ -cone  $V(x_0, \text{st}_\Theta(\tau(\xi_+)))$ . For each bi-infinite  $\Theta$ -straight path  $\xi_-x_0x_1 \dots x_k\xi_+$ , the simplices  $\tau_\pm(\xi_\pm) \subset \partial_\infty X$  are opposite, the path is contained in the parallel set  $P(\tau_-(\xi_-), \tau_+(\xi_+))$  and all segments  $x_ix_j$  for  $i < j$  are  $\Theta$ -longitudinal.*

**Proof** Consider a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -straight path  $x_0x_1\xi_+$ . By straightness, the direction  $\overrightarrow{x_1x_0}$  has an antipode  $v_+$  such that  $\tau(v_+) = \tau(x_1\xi_+)$ . Using Lemma 2.9, we can extend  $x_0x_1$  to a ray  $x_0x_1\eta_+$  such that  $\tau(\eta_+) = \tau(\xi_+)$ . It follows that  $x_1 \in V(x_0, \text{st}_\Theta(\tau(\eta_+))) = V(x_0, \text{st}_\Theta(\tau(\xi_+)))$ . The assertion for semi-infinite paths follows by induction using the nestedness of cones (Corollary 3.17).

Consider now a bi-infinite path  $\xi_-x_0x_1 \dots x_k\xi_+$ . From the semi-infinite case we know that  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k\xi_+ \subset V(x_0, \text{st}_\Theta(\tau(\xi_+)))$ . In particular,  $\tau(x_0\xi_+) = \tau(x_0x_1)$ , and hence the simplices  $\tau_\pm(\xi_\pm)$  are  $x_0$ -opposite. It follows that  $x_0 \in P = P(\tau_-(\xi_-), \tau_+(\xi_+))$  and furthermore that  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k \subset P$ . The longitudinality follows from the semi-infinite case. □

Since longitudinal paths are not only piecewise regular, but globally regular, the proposition can be understood as a *local-to-global* principle for the regularity of broken geodesic paths:

**Corollary 3.24** *Suppose that the path  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k$  is  $\Theta$ -straight. Then all segments  $x_ix_j$  for  $i < j$  are  $\Theta$ -regular, and for  $i < j < k$  it holds that  $\tau_+(x_ix_j) = \tau_+(x_ix_k) \subset \Sigma_{x_i} X$  and  $\tau_-(x_kx_j) = \tau_-(x_kx_i) \subset \Sigma_{x_k} X$ .*

**Proof** We extend the path to a bi-infinite  $\Theta$ -straight path and then apply the proposition. □

We next observe an extension of the convexity property for parallel sets. That parallel sets are convex means, by definition, that a geodesic segment is contained in the parallel set if its endpoints are. This remains true for straight broken geodesic paths whose pair of endpoints in the parallel set is longitudinal:

**Corollary 3.25** (longitudinal convexity of parallel sets) *Let  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k$  be a  $\Theta$ -straight path with endpoints in the parallel set  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  and suppose that the segment  $x_0x_k \subset P$  is longitudinal. Then*

$$x_0x_1 \dots x_k \subset V(x_0, \text{st}_{\Theta^+}(\tau_+)) \cap V(x_k, \text{st}_{\Theta^-}(\tau_-)) \subset P.$$

**Proof** Let  $\xi_{\pm} \in \text{int}(\tau_{\pm})$ . By assumption, the broken path  $\xi_-x_0x_k\xi_+$  is then longitudinal in  $P$ . Since  $\tau_+(x_0x_1) = \tau_+(x_0x_k)$  and  $\tau_-(x_kx_{k-1}) = \tau_-(x_kx_0)$  by Corollary 3.24, the bi-infinite path  $\xi_-x_0x_1 \dots x_k\xi_+$  is also  $\Theta$ -straight. Proposition 3.23 yields that the path  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k$  is contained in  $P$  and, more precisely, in the cones  $V(x_0, \text{st}_{\Theta_+}(\tau_+))$  and  $V(x_k, \text{st}_{\Theta_-}(\tau_-))$ .  $\square$

We push the longitudinal convexity property slightly further for once-broken paths  $x_-yx_+$ , replacing the open assumption of straightness by a closed condition.

**Lemma 3.26** *Let  $x_-x_+\xi_+$  be a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -straight broken path. Suppose  $y \in X - \{x_-, x_+\}$  and there exists a pair of opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$  simplices  $\tau_y^{\pm} \subset \Sigma_y X$  such that  $\vec{y}\vec{x}_{\pm} \in \text{st}(\tau_y^{\pm})$ . Then*

$$y \in V(x_-, \text{st}(\tau(\xi_+))).$$

**Proof** Again, the assertion (and the following argument) is trivial if  $X$  is a symmetric space.

We first look for simplices  $\tau'_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  such that  $\tau_y^{\pm} = \log_y \tau'_{\pm}$  and  $yx_{\pm} \subset V(y, \text{st}(\tau'_{\pm}))$ . To find them, we extend the segments  $yx_{\pm}$  to rays  $y\xi'_{\pm}$  and let  $\sigma_y^{\pm} \supset \tau_y^{\pm}$  be chambers in  $\Sigma_y X$  containing the directions  $\vec{y}\vec{x}_{\pm}$ . According to Lemma 2.9, there exist chambers  $\sigma'_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  such that  $\sigma_y^{\pm} = \log_y \sigma'_{\pm}$  and  $\xi'_{\pm} \in \sigma'_{\pm}$ . Then their type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$  faces  $\tau'_{\pm} \subset \sigma'_{\pm}$  have the desired properties. Moreover, the simplices  $\tau'_{\pm}$  are  $y$ -opposite, because the simplices  $\tau_y^{\pm}$  are opposite. It follows that  $x_-yx_+ \subset P' = P(\tau'_-, \tau'_+)$ .

To see that  $x_-x_+$  is longitudinal in  $P'$ , note that  $y \in V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau'_{\pm}))$ . By Corollary 3.17, there are the triples of nested cones  $V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau'_{\pm})) \supset V(y, \text{st}(\tau'_{\pm})) \supset V(x_{\pm}, \text{st}(\tau'_{\pm}))$ . So,  $x_{\pm} \in V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau'_{\pm}))$ . Since the segment  $x_-x_+$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular, it follows that even  $x_{\pm} \in V(x_{\mp}, \text{ost}(\tau'_{\pm}))$  and  $x_-x_+$  is longitudinal in  $P'$ .

Now  $\xi_+$  comes in and we show that  $\tau'_+$  can be replaced by  $\tau(\xi_+)$ . The straightness of  $x_-x_+\xi_+$  implies that the pair of simplices  $(\tau'_-, \tau(\xi_+))$  is  $x_+$ -opposite. Hence,  $x_-yx_+ \subset V(x_+, \text{st}(\tau'_-)) \subset P(\tau'_-, \tau(\xi_+))$ . Since  $x_- \in V(y, \text{st}(\tau'_-))$ , it follows that  $y \in V(x_-, \text{st}(\tau(\xi_+)))$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 3.27** *Let  $\xi_-x_-x_+\xi_+$  be a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -straight broken path. Suppose that  $y \in X - \{x_-, x_+\}$  and there exists a pair of opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$  simplices  $\tau_y^{\pm} \subset \Sigma_y X$  such that  $\vec{y}\vec{x}_{\pm} \in \text{st}(\tau_y^{\pm})$ . Then*

$$y \in V(x_-, \text{st}(\tau_+(\xi_+))) \cap V(x_+, \text{st}(\tau_-(\xi_-))) \subset P(\tau_-(\xi_-), \tau_+(\xi_+)).$$

Sometimes the following terminology extending Definition 2.12 will be convenient:

**Definition 3.28** ( $(x_-, x_+)$ -opposite) For a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular segment  $x_-x_+ \subset X$ , we say that a pair  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  of opposite simplices  $\tau_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  is  $(x_-, x_+)$ -opposite if the pairs of simplices  $(\log_{x_{\pm}} \tau_{\pm}, \tau_{\mp}(x_{\pm}x_{\mp}))$  are opposite (for both choices of signs).

**Lemma 3.29** Two opposite simplices  $\tau_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$  are  $(x_-, x_+)$ -opposite if and only if  $x_-x_+$  is a longitudinal segment in the parallel set  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ .

**Proof** This follows from the fact that straight broken paths are contained in parallel sets as longitudinal paths; see Proposition 3.23. □

### 3.5 Diamonds and Weyl hulls

We define diamonds independently of ambient parallel sets:

**Definition 3.30** (diamond) The  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamond of a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular segment  $x_-x_+ \subset X$  is the subset

$$\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+) \subset X$$

consisting of  $x_{\pm}$  and all points  $y \in X - \{x_-, x_+\}$  such that  $y\vec{x}_{\pm} \in \text{st}(\tau_y^{\pm})$  for some pair of opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$  simplices  $\tau_y^{\pm} \subset \Sigma_y X$ .

Longitudinal convexity implies that diamonds are contained in parallel sets and yields the following description:

**Lemma 3.31** For any pair  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  of  $(x_-, x_+)$ -opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$  simplices  $\tau_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} X$ , it holds that

$$\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+) = V(x_-, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \cap V(x_+, \text{st}(\tau_-)) \subset P(\tau_-, \tau_+).$$

**Proof** That the diamond is contained in the intersection of Weyl cones follows immediately from Corollary 3.27. The reverse inclusion is clear. □

We will refer to  $V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}))$  as *ambient Weyl cones* and to  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  as an *ambient parallel set* for the diamond. Again, these are unique if  $X$  is a symmetric space, but not if it is a euclidean building.

It follows in particular that diamonds are *convex*.

Around their tips, diamonds coincide up to a uniform radius with Weyl cones. With the constant  $\epsilon_0(\Theta)$  from (2-3), we have:

**Lemma 3.32** (conical around tips) (i)  $\Sigma_{x_{\pm}} \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+) = \text{st}(\tau_{\mp}(x_{\pm}x_{\mp}))$ .

(ii) If  $x_-x_+$  is  $\Theta$ -regular, then every segment in  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  with initial point  $x_{\pm}$  extends to a unique segment in  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  of length  $\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)d(x_-, x_+)$ .

**Proof** Let  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  be an  $(x_-, x_+)$ -opposite pair of simplices. Since  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  coincides with  $V(x_{\pm}, \text{st}(\tau_{\mp}))$  near  $x_{\pm}$ , we have that

$$\Sigma_{x_{\pm}} \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+) = \Sigma_{x_{\pm}} V(x_{\pm}, \text{st}(\tau_{\mp})) = \text{st}(\tau_{\mp}(x_{\pm}x_{\mp})).$$

By triangle comparison,  $x_{\pm}$  has distance  $\geq \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)d(x_-, x_+)$  from  $\partial V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}))$ . It follows that  $B(x_{\pm}, \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)d(x_-, x_+)) \cap P(\tau_-, \tau_+) \subset V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}))$ . Intersecting with  $V(x_{\pm}, \text{st}(\tau_{\mp}))$  yields the assertion.  $\square$

As a consequence of Lemma 3.15, the interior of the diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  with respect to an ambient parallel set  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  is given by

$$(3-1) \quad \text{int}(\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)) = (V(x_-, \text{ost}(\tau_+)) \cap V(x_+, \text{ost}(\tau_-))) - \{x_-, x_+\}.$$

Note that the interior is always nonempty. For instance, the interior points of the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular segment  $x_-x_+$  belong to it.

For a  $\Theta$ -regular segment  $x_-x_+$ , we define the  $\Theta$ -diamond

$$\diamond_{\Theta}(x_-, x_+) \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$$

in a similar way as the subset consisting of  $x_{\pm}$  and all points  $y \in X - \{x_-, x_+\}$  for which the segments  $yx_{\pm}$  are  $\Theta_{\pm}$ -regular with opposite  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -directions  $\tau_{\pm}(yx_{\pm})$  at  $y$ . It follows from Lemma 3.31 that

$$\diamond_{\Theta}(x_-, x_+) = V(x_-, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+)) \cap V(x_+, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_-)).$$

We will need the following semicontinuity property of diamonds:

**Lemma 3.33** (semicontinuity) Suppose that the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  intersects the open subset  $O \subset X$ . Then, for all pairs of points  $(x'_-, x'_+)$  sufficiently close to  $(x_-, x_+)$ , the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x'_-, x'_+)$  still intersects  $O$ .

**Proof** Suppose first that  $X$  is a euclidean building. By assumption, there exists a point  $y \in O \cap \text{int}(\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+))$ . The segments  $yx_{\pm}$  are  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -regular. Therefore, if the points  $x'_{\pm}$  are sufficiently close to  $x_{\pm}$ , then also the segments  $yx'_{\pm}$  are  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -regular

and  $\tau_{\pm}(yx'_{\pm}) = \tau_{\pm}(yx_{\pm})$ . In particular, the simplices  $\tau_{\pm}(yx'_{\pm})$  are opposite and it follows that  $y \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x'_{-}, x'_{+})$ .

Suppose now that  $X$  is a symmetric space. Let  $P$  denote the unique ambient parallel set of the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_{-}, x_{+})$ . The argument used in the euclidean building case now proves the assertion for pairs of points in the parallel set, ie there exists  $\epsilon > 0$  such that the assertion holds for the pair  $(x'_{-}, x'_{+})$  if  $x'_{\pm} \in B(x_{\pm}, \epsilon) \cap P$ . Using the action of the isometry group  $G = \text{Isom}(X)$ , it follows furthermore that there exists a neighborhood  $U$  of the neutral element in  $G$ , such that the assertion holds for all pairs  $g \cdot (x'_{-}, x'_{+})$  with  $g \in U$  and  $x'_{\pm} \in B(x_{\pm}, \epsilon) \cap P$ . Since  $G$  acts transitively on type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel sets, this finishes the proof.  $\square$

We will prove later the stronger property that diamonds depend *continuously* on their pair of tips; see Proposition 3.56 below.

In order to define longitudinal directions in diamonds, we observe that whether a direction is longitudinal with respect to an ambient parallel set does not depend on the ambient parallel set:

**Lemma 3.34** *Let  $y \in \diamond$ . If the segment  $yx_{\pm}$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -regular, then  $\text{st}(\log_y \tau_{\pm}) = \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}(yx_{\pm})) \subset \Sigma_y \diamond$ . Otherwise,  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_{\pm}) \cap \Sigma_y \diamond = \emptyset$ .*

**Proof** The segment  $yx_{+}$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{+}$ -regular if and only if  $y \in V(x_{+}, \text{ost}(\tau_{-})) - \{x_{+}\}$ .

Thus, if  $yx_{+}$  is not  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{+}$ -regular, then  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_{+})$  is disjoint from

$$\Sigma_y V(x_{+}, \text{st}(\tau_{-})) \supset \Sigma_y \diamond$$

by Lemma 3.19. On the other hand, if  $yx_{+}$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{+}$ -regular, then  $\diamond = V(x_{-}, \text{st}(\tau_{+}))$  near  $y$ , and Lemma 3.19 yields that  $\Sigma_y \diamond$  contains  $\text{st}(\log_y \tau_{+})$ . Moreover,  $\log_y \tau_{+} = \tau_{+}(yx_{+})$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 3.35** *The intersection  $\Sigma_y \diamond \cap \text{ost}(\log_y \tau_{\pm})$  does not depend on the ambient parallel set  $P(\tau_{-}, \tau_{+})$ . It is nonempty if and only if the segment  $yx_{\pm}$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$ -regular, and then equal to  $\text{ost}(\log_y \tau_{\pm}) = \text{ost}(\tau_{\pm}(yx_{\pm}))$ .*

This justifies:

**Definition 3.36** (longitudinal directions in diamonds) In a point  $y \in \diamond$ , we call the directions in  $\Sigma_y \diamond \cap \text{ost}(\log_y \tau_{+})$  *longitudinal* and the directions in  $\Sigma_y \diamond \cap \text{ost}(\log_y \tau_{-})$  *antlongitudinal*.



As before in the case of parallel sets and Weyl cones, we call  $\Theta$ -regular (anti)longitudinal directions  $\Theta$ -(anti)longitudinal and we call a nondegenerate segment  $\Theta$ -(anti)longitudinal if its (initial) direction has this property. Note that the segment  $x_-x_+$  is longitudinal.

Our discussion shows that directions and segments in the diamond are longitudinal if and only if they are longitudinal in an ambient parallel set.

Based on the notion of longitudinality, we can now state:

**Lemma 3.37** (nested diamonds) *If  $x'_-x'_+ \subset \diamond$  is longitudinal, then*

$$\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x'_-, x'_+) \subset \diamond.$$

*If the segment  $x'_-x'_+ \subset \diamond_{\Theta}(x_-, x_+)$  is  $\Theta$ -longitudinal, then*

$$\diamond_{\Theta}(x'_-, x'_+) \subset \diamond_{\Theta}(x_-, x_+).$$

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of the nestedness of cones; see Corollary 3.17.  $\square$

We can also reformulate the longitudinal convexity property of parallel sets; see Corollary 3.25, for diamonds:

**Corollary 3.38** (longitudinal convexity of diamonds) *Each  $\Theta$ -straight broken geodesic path  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k$  is contained in the  $\Theta$ -diamond  $\diamond_{\Theta}(x_0, x_k)$ , and all segments  $x_ix_j$  for  $i < j$  are  $\Theta$ -longitudinal.*

We turn to the discussion of Weyl hulls of segments.

Weyl hulls are analogues of diamonds inside singular flats. We also define them intrinsically without reference to ambient flats:

**Definition 3.39** (Weyl hull) *The Weyl hull of a nondegenerate segment  $x_-x_+ \subset X$  with type  $\theta(x_-x_+) \in \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  is the subset*

$$Q(x_-, x_+) \subset X$$

consisting of  $x_{\pm}$  and all points  $y \in X - \{x_-, x_+\}$  such that  $\overrightarrow{yx_{\pm}} \in \tau_y^{\pm}$  for some pair of opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^{\pm}$  simplices  $\tau_y^{\pm} \subset \Sigma_y X$ .

Clearly,  $Q(x_-, x_+) \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$ .

Applying the description of diamonds, it follows that Weyl hulls are cross-sections of diamonds by singular flats. Indeed, let  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  be a pair of  $(x_-, x_+)$ -opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  simplices  $\tau_\pm \subset \partial_\infty X$ . Then the segment  $x_-x_+$  is contained in a singular flat  $f$  with ideal boundary sphere  $\partial_\infty f = s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ , and we obtain:

**Lemma 3.40**  $Q(x_-, x_+) = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+) \cap f = V(x_-, \tau_+) \cap V(x_+, \tau_-) \subset f$ .

**Proof** Let  $y \in Q(x_-, x_+) - \{x_-, x_+\}$ . Then  $\theta(x_\pm y) \in \tau_{\text{mod}}^\mp$ . In view of  $Q(x_-, x_+) \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$ , Lemma 3.31 implies that  $y \in V(x_\pm, \tau_\mp) = V(x_\pm, \text{st}(\tau_\mp)) \cap f$ . Conversely, the intersection of the sectors  $V(x_\pm, \tau_\mp)$  belongs to  $Q(x_-, x_+)$ .  $\square$

We will refer to  $V(x_\mp, \tau_\pm)$  as *ambient Weyl sectors* and to  $f$  as an *minimal ambient flat* for the Weyl hull. These are unique if  $X$  is a symmetric space, but not if it is a euclidean building.

It follows that Weyl hulls are *flat parallelepipeds*, in particular that Weyl hulls are *convex*.

**Remark 6** Weyl hulls can in fact be characterized by these properties: one can show that  $Q(x_-, x_+)$  is the smallest closed convex subset of  $X$  which contains the segment  $x_-x_+$  and has the property that all spaces of directions are subcomplexes.

We have the following estimate for the size of conical neighborhoods around the tips:

**Lemma 3.41** (conical around tips) (i)  $\Sigma_{x_\pm} Q(x_-, x_+) = \tau_\mp(x_\pm x_\mp)$ .

(ii) *If the segment  $x_-x_+$  is  $\Theta$ -regular, ie  $\theta(x_-x_+) \in \Theta \cap \tau_{\text{mod}} \subset \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ , then the intersection  $Q(x_-, x_+) \cap \bar{B}(x_\pm, d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta))$  is a flat cone of height  $d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)$  with tip  $x_\pm$ .*

**Proof** This is a consequence of Lemma 3.32.

Alternatively, one can prove this lemma analogously to Lemma 3.32 also directly using Lemma 3.40: The point  $x_\pm$  has distance  $\geq d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)$  from  $\partial V(x_\mp, \text{st}(\tau_\pm))$ . It follows that  $\bar{B}(x_\pm, d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)) \cap f \subset V(x_\mp, \tau_\pm)$ . Intersecting with  $V(x_\pm, \tau_\mp)$  yields the assertion.  $\square$

We define the Weyl hull of a degenerate segment  $xx$  as the one-point subset

$$Q(x, x) = \{x\}.$$

### 3.6 Rays longitudinally approaching parallel sets

We consider now geodesic rays which are *longitudinally asymptotic* to parallel sets and show that they must approach — and, in euclidean buildings, enter — the parallel set at a uniform rate.

Let  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+) \subset X$  be a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set.

Suppose first that the model space  $X$  is a symmetric space. In this case, longitudinally asymptotic rays do not enter parallel sets, but approach them at a uniform exponential rate. We will only prove the weaker statement, sufficient for our purposes, that they do so at some uniform rate.

**Lemma 3.42** *For  $d > 0$  there exists a constant  $\delta = \delta(d, \Theta) > 0$  such that the following holds:*

*If  $x \in X$  with  $d(x, P) \geq d$  and  $\xi \in \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$ , then  $\angle_x(\pi_P(x), \xi) \leq \frac{\pi}{2} - \delta$ .*

**Proof** We write  $\bar{x} = \pi_P(x)$ . If  $x' \in x\bar{x}$  is the point at distance exactly  $d$  from  $P$ , then  $\angle_{x'}(\bar{x}, \xi) \geq \angle_x(\bar{x}, \xi)$ . We may therefore assume that  $d(x, P) = d$ .

Note that  $\angle_x(\bar{x}, \xi) \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , because the angle sum of the ideal triangle  $\Delta(x, \bar{x}, \xi)$  is  $\leq \pi$ . Suppose that  $\angle_x(\bar{x}, \xi) = \frac{\pi}{2}$ . Then the ray  $x\xi$  is parallel to  $P$  and extends to a geodesic line  $l \not\subset P$  parallel to  $P$ . This line is forward asymptotic to  $l(+\infty) = \xi \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$ , and its backward ideal endpoint  $l(-\infty)$  is therefore contained in  $\text{ost}(\tau_-)$ ; see Lemma 2.5. Since the singular sphere in  $\partial_{\text{Tits}} X$  spanned by the pair of antipodes  $l(\pm\infty)$  contains the simplices  $\tau_\pm$ , and hence also the singular sphere  $s(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ , it follows that  $P(l) \subset P$ , which is a contradiction to  $l \not\subset P$ .

Thus, the continuous function

$$(x, \xi) \mapsto \angle_x(\pi_P(x), \xi)$$

on  $\partial N_d(P) \times \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$  takes values in the open interval  $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$ . It is invariant under the stabilizer in  $\text{Isom}(X)$  of the pair of simplices  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ , because the stabilizer preserves  $P$  and  $\text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$ . It acts transitively on  $P$  and hence cocompactly on  $\partial N_d(P) \times \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$ . It follows that the range of the function in  $(0, \frac{\pi}{2})$  is compact. Furthermore, the range does not depend on the parallel set, because all type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel sets are equivalent modulo the action of the isometry group. □

We obtain:

**Proposition 3.43** (rays approaching parallel sets in symmetric spaces) *For  $d > 0$  there exists a constant  $C = C(\Theta, d) > 0$  such that the following holds:*

*If  $x \in X$  and  $\xi \in \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$ , then the points on the ray  $x\xi$  with distance  $\geq C \cdot d(x, P)$  from  $x$  are contained in  $\bar{N}_d(P)$ .*

**Proof** Let  $r: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  be a unit-speed parametrization of the ray  $x\xi$ . Then the function  $f(t) := d(r(t), P)$  is smooth with derivative  $f'(t) = -\cos \angle_{r(t)}(\pi_P \circ r(t), \xi)$ ; see (2-1). By the previous lemma,  $f'(t) \leq -\sin \delta$  as long as  $f(t) \geq d$ . This yields a uniform upper bound for the entry time, linear in  $d(x, P)$ . □

Suppose for the rest of this section that the model space  $X$  is a euclidean building.

We obtain the following version of Proposition 3.43, where  $\epsilon_0(\Theta)$  is the constant from (2-3). The special case of maximal flats had been proven in [13, Lemma 4.6.3].

**Proposition 3.44** (rays diving into parallel sets in euclidean buildings) *Suppose that  $x \in X$  and  $\xi \in \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$ . Then the ray  $x\xi$  enters  $P$ , and its entry point  $z$  satisfies*

$$\angle_z(x, P) \geq \epsilon_0(\Theta) > 0$$

and

$$d(x, z) \leq (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta))^{-1} \cdot d(x, P).$$

**Proof** We assume that  $x \notin P$  and write  $\bar{x} = \pi_P(x)$ .

Let  $y \in \bar{x}\xi$  and suppose that  $d(x, y) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta) > d(x, P)$ . Applying comparison to the triangle  $\Delta(x, \bar{x}, y)$ , we can bound the angle  $\angle_y(\bar{x}, x)$  by

$$(3-2) \quad d(x, y) \cdot \sin \angle_y(\bar{x}, x) \leq d(x, P).$$

It follows that  $\angle_y(\bar{x}, x) < \epsilon_0$ . This implies that  $\tau_-(yx) = \tau_-(y\bar{x})$  and hence  $\vec{y}\bar{x} \in \text{ost}(\log_y \tau_-)$  is tangent to  $P$ .

Since all tangent directions to  $P$  are represented by segments in  $P$ , and since segments with angle zero in a euclidean building initially coincide — see the discussion of angle rigidity in Section 2.5 — it follows that the segment  $yx$  is initially contained in  $P$ . Let  $z$  denote the interior point on the segment  $yx$  where it exits  $P$ , in other words, the point where the segment  $xy$  enters  $P$ . Then  $\vec{z}\bar{x} \notin \Sigma_z P$ , because  $zx \cap P = \{z\}$ .

As a consequence of (3-2), given  $\Theta'$ , the direction  $\vec{y}\bar{z} = \vec{y}\bar{x} \in \Sigma_y P$  becomes  $\Theta'_-$ -longitudinal as  $y \rightarrow \infty$ , and, accordingly,  $\vec{z}\bar{y} \in \text{st}_{\Theta'}(\log_z \tau_+) \subset \Sigma_z P$ . By Corollary 2.7,

it follows that the antipodal direction  $\bar{z}\bar{x} \notin \Sigma_z P$  cannot have too small an angle with  $P$ , ie  $\angle_z(x, P) \geq \epsilon_0(\Theta') > 0$ . Applying comparison to the triangle  $\Delta(x, \bar{x}, z)$  as above then yields a uniform estimate for the entry time of  $xy$  into  $P$ :

$$d(x, z) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta') \leq d(x, P).$$

The segment  $xy$  converges to the ray  $x\xi$  as  $y \rightarrow \infty$ , and the entry point subconverges to a point in  $x\xi \cap P$ . This shows that the ray  $x\xi$  enters  $P$ , and that the entry point  $\hat{z}$  satisfies the same estimate,

$$d(x, \hat{z}) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta') \leq d(x, P).$$

Since this estimate holds for all  $\Theta'$  (containing  $\Theta$  in their interior), we also obtain it for  $\Theta$ . □

**Remark 7** The longitudinality assumption (that  $\xi \in \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$ ) is necessary, in both Propositions 3.43 and 3.44, if  $\tau_{\text{mod}} \subsetneq \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . Note that  $\partial_\infty P$  does in general not contain the stars around the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplices in  $\partial_\infty P$  other than  $\tau_\pm$ . Accordingly, there may exist  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular rays which are asymptotic to  $P$ , but not strongly asymptotic. Such rays cannot be  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ -regular.

We will later use different versions and consequences of the proposition. For instance, we can also uniformly estimate the entry time into Weyl cones in  $P$  asymptotic to  $\tau_+$ :

**Corollary 3.45** (rays diving into Weyl cones) *Suppose that  $x \in X$ ,  $\xi \in \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)$  and  $\hat{x} \in P$ . Then the ray  $x\xi$  enters the Weyl cone  $V(\hat{x}, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \subset P$ , and its entry point  $w$  satisfies*

$$d(x, w) \leq (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta))^{-1} \cdot d(x, \hat{x}).$$

**Proof** Let  $z \in P$  be the entry point of  $x\xi$  into  $P$ , as given by the previous proposition. Then

$$d(x, z) \leq (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta))^{-1} \cdot d(x, \hat{x}).$$

Let  $w' \in z\xi = x\xi \cap P$  be a point at distance  $d(x, w') > (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta))^{-1} \cdot d(x, \hat{x})$ . Applying CAT(0) comparison to the triangle  $\Delta(x, \hat{x}, w')$ , we get that  $\angle_{w'}(z, \hat{x}) = \angle_{w'}(x, \hat{x}) < \epsilon_0$ . It follows that  $\overrightarrow{w'\hat{x}} \in \text{ost}(\log_{w'} \tau_-)$ , ie the segment  $w'\hat{x}$  is antilongitudinal. Hence,  $w' \in V(\hat{x}, \text{st}(\tau_+))$ . □

The next versions of the proposition estimate the rate at which rays move away from Weyl cones and sectors:

**Corollary 3.46** (rays leaving Weyl cones) *Let  $\rho: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  be a  $\Theta$ -regular unit-speed ray, and let  $t_0 \geq 0$  denote the time when  $\rho$  exits the Weyl cone  $V = V(\rho(0), \text{st}(\tau_+))$ . Then*

$$\angle_{\rho(t_0)}(\rho(+\infty), V) \geq \epsilon_0(\Theta) > 0$$

and

$$d(\rho(t), V) \geq (t - t_0) \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta) \quad \text{for } t \geq t_0.$$

**Proof** If  $t_0 = 0$ , then  $\dot{\rho}(0) \notin \Sigma_{\rho(0)}V = \text{st}(\log_{\rho(0)} \tau_+)$ , and the angle estimate holds due to  $\Theta$ -regularity. If  $t_0 > 0$ , we may assume that  $\rho(0) \in P$ . Then  $\dot{\rho}(0) \in \Sigma_{\rho(0)}V$  and  $\rho$  can be extended by a ray in  $P$  to a line  $l: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow X$  backward asymptotic to  $l(-\infty) \in \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_-)$ . Applying Proposition 3.44 to subrays of  $l$  yields the angle estimate also in this case. As before, triangle comparison based on the angle estimate yields the distance estimate  $d(\rho(t), V) \geq d(\rho(t), P) \geq (t - t_0) \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 3.47** (rays leaving Weyl sectors) *Let  $\rho: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  be a unit-speed ray of type  $\theta(\dot{\rho}) \equiv \bar{\zeta} \in \Theta \cap \tau_{\text{mod}} \subset \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ , and let  $t_0 \geq 0$  denote the time when  $\rho$  exits the Weyl sector  $\check{V} = V(\rho(0), \tau_+)$ . Then*

$$\angle_{\rho(t_0)}(\dot{\rho}(t_0), \check{V}) \geq \epsilon_0(\Theta) > 0$$

and

$$d(\rho(t), \check{V}) \geq (t - t_0) \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta) \quad \text{for } t \geq t_0.$$

**Proof** The exit direction  $\dot{\rho}(t_0)$  is not tangent to  $\check{V}$ ,  $\dot{\rho}(t_0) \notin \Sigma_{\rho(t_0)}\check{V}$ . Since it has type  $\theta(\dot{\rho}(t_0)) \in \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ , it spans the simplex  $\tau(\dot{\rho}(t_0))$ , ie  $\dot{\rho}(t_0) \in \text{int}(\tau(\dot{\rho}(t_0)))$ . It follows that the simplex  $\tau(\dot{\rho}(t_0))$  is not contained in the (finite) subcomplex  $\Sigma_{\rho(t_0)}\check{V}$ , equivalently,  $\text{ost}(\tau(\dot{\rho}(t_0))) \cap \Sigma_{\rho(t_0)}\check{V} = \emptyset$ . This yields the angle estimate, and triangle comparison yields the distance estimate.  $\square$

We apply the above estimates to show that Weyl cones with the same type and tip must coincide up to a certain radius if they are close up to a certain larger radius in some uniformly regular direction:

**Lemma 3.48** (initial coincidence of nearby truncated Weyl cones) *Let  $r, D, R \geq 0$  be constants with  $R \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta) \geq r + D$ . Suppose that for simplices  $\tau_+, \tau'_+ \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\infty} X)$  and a point  $x \in X$  it holds that*

$$(V(x, \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_+)) - B(x, R)) \cap \bar{N}_D(V(x, \text{st}(\tau'_+))) \neq \emptyset.$$

Then

$$V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \cap \bar{B}(x, r) = V(x, \text{st}(\tau'_+)) \cap \bar{B}(x, r).$$

**Proof** Let  $y \in (V(x, \text{st}_\Theta(\tau_+)) - B(x, R)) \cap \bar{N}_D(V(x, \text{st}(\tau'_+)))$ , and let  $\tau'_-$  be a simplex  $x$ -opposite to  $\tau'_+$ . Then  $V' = V(x, \text{st}(\tau'_+)) \subset P' = P(\tau'_-, \tau'_+)$ . Furthermore, the segment  $xy$  is  $\Theta$ -regular and has length  $\geq R$ . Let  $z \in xy$  denote the point where the segment  $xy$  exits the cone  $V'$ , ie  $xy \cap V' = xz$ . Then

$$\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z) \subset V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \cap V(x, \text{st}(\tau'_+)).$$

Corollary 3.46 yields the estimate  $d(z, y) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0 \leq D$ . Hence, the  $\Theta$ -regular segment  $xz$  has length  $\geq R - (\sin \epsilon_0)^{-1}D \geq (\sin \epsilon_0)^{-1}r$ . By Lemma 3.32, the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z)$  agrees up to radius  $d(x, z) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0 \geq r$  around its vertex  $x$  with both cones  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau_+))$  and  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau'_+))$ .  $\square$

We give a version of the last result for sectors, namely that Weyl sectors with the same type and tip must coincide up to a certain radius, if they are close up to a certain larger radius:

**Lemma 3.49** (initial coincidence of nearby truncated Weyl sectors) *Let  $r, D, R \geq 0$  be constants with  $R \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta) \geq r + D$ . Suppose that for simplices  $\tau_+, \tau'_+ \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  and a point  $x \in X$  the truncated Weyl sectors  $V(x, \tau_+) \cap \bar{B}(x, R)$  and  $V(x, \tau'_+) \cap \bar{B}(x, R)$  are  $D$ -Hausdorff-close. Then*

$$V(x, \tau_+) \cap \bar{B}(x, r) = V(x, \tau'_+) \cap \bar{B}(x, r).$$

**Proof** Consider a  $\Theta$ -regular unit-speed ray with initial point  $x$  in the Weyl sector  $V(x, \tau'_+)$ . Since the ray remains in the  $D$ -neighborhood of the other sector  $V(x, \tau_+)$  up to time  $R$ , it does not exit  $V(x, \tau_+)$  before time  $R - (\sin \epsilon_0)^{-1}D$ ; see Corollary 3.47. Therefore, the intersection of the sectors  $V(x, \tau_+)$  and  $V(x, \tau'_+)$  contains a  $\Theta$ -regular segment  $xz$  of length  $R - (\sin \epsilon_0)^{-1}D$ . In view of Lemma 3.40, it follows that the Weyl hull of  $xz$  is also contained in this intersection:

$$Q(x, z) \subset V(x, \tau_+) \cap V(x, \tau'_+).$$

By Lemma 3.41,  $Q(x, z)$  contains a conical neighborhood of radius  $d(x, z) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0 \geq r$  around its tip  $x$ . So, the sectors  $V(x, \tau_+)$  and  $V(x, \tau'_+)$  coincide at least up to radius  $r$ .  $\square$

### 3.7 Continuity of diamonds

Let  $X$  be again a model space. The main result of this technical section is that diamonds depend continuously on their tips; see Proposition 3.56.

Let  $x_-x_+ \subset X$  be a  $\Theta$ -regular segment and consider the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamond

$$\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$$

spanned by it. Our first goal is to estimate the *inradius* of the diamond.

We represent the diamond as an intersection of Weyl cones in an ambient parallel set,

$$\diamond = V(x_-, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \cap V(x_+, \text{st}(\tau_-)) \subset P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+).$$

We recall (see Proposition 3.16) that inside  $P$  each of the Weyl cones  $V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}))$  is the intersection of a certain family of horoballs,

$$V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm})) = P \cap \bigcap_{\zeta \in Z_{\pm}} \{b_{\zeta} \leq 0\},$$

with centers  $\zeta \in Z_{\pm} \subset \partial_{\infty} P$  and normalized by  $b_{\zeta}(x_{\mp}) = 0$  for  $\zeta \in Z_{\pm}$ . Accordingly, for the convex function

$$b = \sup_{\zeta \in Z} b_{\zeta},$$

where  $Z = Z_- \cup Z_+$ , we have

$$\diamond = \{b|_P \leq 0\}.$$

We estimate the decay of these Busemann functions  $b_{\zeta}$  along the segment  $x_-x_+$ .

**Lemma 3.50** *If  $\zeta \in Z_{\pm}$ , then  $b_{\zeta}(x_{\mp}) - b_{\zeta}(x_{\pm}) \geq d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ .*

**Proof** We extend  $x_-x_+$  to a  $\Theta$ -longitudinal line  $l \subset P$ . Then  $\xi_{\pm} := l(\pm\infty) \in \text{st}_{\Theta}(\tau_{\pm})$ . If  $\zeta \in Z_{\pm}$ , then the Weyl cone  $V(x_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}))$  is contained in a horoball centered at  $\zeta$ , and therefore  $\text{st}(\tau_{\pm}) \subset \bar{B}(\zeta, \frac{\pi}{2})$ . Hence,  $\bar{B}(\xi_{\pm}, \epsilon_0(\Theta)) \subset \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}) \subset \bar{B}(\zeta, \frac{\pi}{2})$ . It follows that  $\angle_{\text{Tits}}(\xi_{\pm}, \zeta) \leq \frac{\pi}{2} - \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ . Thus, the Busemann function  $b_{\zeta}$  has slope  $\leq -\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)$  along the ray  $x_{\mp}\xi_{\pm} \supset x_-x_+$ . □

We denote by  $m$  the midpoint of the segment  $x_-x_+$ .

**Corollary 3.51** (thickness of diamonds)  $b(m) \leq -\frac{1}{2}d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ .

**Proof** Since  $b_{\zeta}(x_{\mp}) = 0$  for  $\zeta \in Z_{\pm}$ , the convexity of Busemann functions implies that  $b_{\zeta}(m) \leq -\frac{1}{2}d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ . Taking the supremum over  $Z$  yields the assertion. □



Next, we discuss *product splittings* of diamonds induced by splittings of the model space.

Suppose that the model chamber splits as a spherical join

$$(3-3) \quad \sigma_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}^1 \circ \sigma_{\text{mod}}^2,$$

and let  $X = X_1 \times X_2$  be the corresponding product splitting of the model space; see Section 2.5. If  $\tau_{\text{mod}} \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}^1$ , then also the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -parallel sets,  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Weyl cones and  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds split off the  $X_2$ -factor. Thus, the diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  splits as

$$\diamond = \diamond_1 \times X_2,$$

and the cross-section in the complementary factor is again a diamond,

$$\diamond_1 = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}^{X_1}(x_1^-, x_1^+) \subset X_1.$$

The segment  $x_1^- x_1^+ \subset X_1$  is  $(\Theta \cap \sigma_{\text{mod}}^1)$ -regular. It is shorter than the segment  $x_- x_+$ , but of comparable length. Indeed, the angle between the  $\Theta$ -regular segment  $x_- x_+$  and the  $X_1$ -factor is bounded above by  $\text{diam}(\Theta) \leq \frac{\pi}{2} - \epsilon_0(\Theta)$ , and hence

$$(3-4) \quad d(x_-, x_+) \cdot \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta) \leq d(x_1^-, x_1^+) \leq d(x_-, x_+).$$

In the following discussion, we fix the unique splitting (3-3) such that  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^1$  is minimal with the property that it contains  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ . This includes the possibility of the trivial splitting with  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^1 = \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^2 = \emptyset$ , accordingly,  $X = X_1$  and  $X_2 = \text{pt}$ . We note that  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^2 \subset \partial \text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ .

In general, there is no better diameter bound than  $\text{diam}(\sigma_{\text{mod}}^1) \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , but we do have a uniform radius bound

$$(3-5) \quad \text{rad}(\sigma_{\text{mod}}^1, \cdot) \leq \rho_0 = \rho_0(\Theta) < \frac{\pi}{2}$$

on  $\Theta_1 := \Theta \cap \sigma_{\text{mod}}^1$ , because otherwise  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}^1$  would not be minimal.

We prove now that there is a *uniform diameter bound* for the cross-section of diamonds.

For a type  $\bar{\xi} \in \Theta \cap \tau_{\text{mod}}$ , we define a  $\bar{\xi}$ -height function

$$h_{\bar{\xi}}: \diamond \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

as follows: For every longitudinal (oriented) line  $l_{\bar{\xi}} \subset P$  of type  $\bar{\xi}$  it holds that  $P = P(l_{\bar{\xi}}) \cong l_{\bar{\xi}} \times \text{CS}(\partial_{\infty} l_{\bar{\xi}})$ . We define  $h_{\bar{\xi}}$  as the restriction of a Busemann function,

$$h_{\bar{\xi}} := b_{l_{\bar{\xi}}(-\infty)}|_{\diamond}.$$

The function  $h_{\bar{\xi}}$  has the following properties, and is determined by them up to an additive constant: it is 1-Lipschitz, affine (ie affine linear along every geodesic segment), constant on the intersections of  $\diamond$  with the cross-sections  $\text{pt} \times \text{CS}(\partial_{\infty} l_{\bar{\xi}})$  of  $P$  and linear with slope  $\equiv 1$  on the intersections of  $\diamond$  with the lines  $l_{\bar{\xi}} \times \text{pt}$ . The function  $h_{\bar{\xi}}$  is therefore independent of the ambient parallel set  $P$  and well defined up to an additive constant.

Since  $\text{diam}(\sigma_{\text{mod}}) \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , we have that  $\text{rad}(\sigma_{\text{mod}}, \cdot) \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$  in particular on  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ , and hence, for every simplex  $\tau \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\infty} X)$ , that  $\text{rad}(\text{st}(\tau), \cdot) \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$  on  $\tau$ . In particular,

$$(3-6) \quad \angle_{x_{\mp}}(l_{\bar{\xi}}(\pm\infty), \cdot) \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$$

on  $\diamond - \{x_{\mp}\}$ , and it follows that

$$(3-7) \quad h_{\bar{\xi}}(x_{-}) \leq h_{\bar{\xi}} \leq h_{\bar{\xi}}(x_{+}).$$

The estimates (3-6) and (3-7) improve when restricting to the cross-section of the diamond. The angle bound (3-5) yields the estimate

$$\angle_{x_1^{\mp}}(l_{\bar{\xi}}(\pm\infty), \cdot) \leq \rho_0$$

on  $\diamond_1 - \{x_1^{\mp}\}$ . (Note that the line  $l_{\bar{\xi}}$  is parallel to  $X_1$  and  $l_{\bar{\xi}}(\pm\infty) \in \partial_{\infty} X_1$ .) This implies that

$$(3-8) \quad h_{\bar{\xi}}(x_1^{-}) + d(x_1^{-}, \cdot) \cos \rho_0 \leq h_{\bar{\xi}} \leq h_{\bar{\xi}}(x_1^{+}) - d(x_1^{+}, \cdot) \cos \rho_0$$

on  $\diamond_1$ .

**Lemma 3.52** (diameter bound) *The diameter of the cross-section of the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamond  $\diamond$  is uniformly bounded by*

$$\text{diam}(\diamond_1) \leq 2(\cos \rho_0(\Theta))^{-1} d(x_1^{-}, x_1^{+}).$$

**Proof** From (3-8) we get the radius bound

$$\text{rad}(\diamond_1, x_1^{\pm}) \cos \rho_0 \leq h_{\bar{\xi}}(x_1^{+}) - h_{\bar{\xi}}(x_1^{-}) \leq d(x_1^{-}, x_1^{+})$$

and hence the diameter bound, as claimed. □

We apply our discussion to prove that diamonds *depend continuously on their tips* with respect to the Hausdorff topology. We first consider diamonds inside a fixed parallel set.

Let  $\diamond \subset P$  be as above, and let

$$\diamond' = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x'_-, x'_+) = V(x'_-, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \cap V(x'_+, \text{st}(\tau_-)) \subset P$$

be a second diamond in the same parallel set  $P$ . Then the Weyl cones  $V(x'_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm}))$  are intersections

$$V(x'_{\mp}, \text{st}(\tau_{\pm})) = P \cap \bigcap_{\zeta \in Z_{\pm}} \{b'_{\zeta} \leq 0\}$$

of horoballs with the same centers, but the new Busemann functions  $b'_{\zeta}$  are normalized at the new tips  $x'_{\mp}$ , ie  $b'_{\zeta}(x'_{\mp}) = 0$  for  $\zeta \in Z_{\pm}$ . The second diamond is then defined as the sublevel set

$$\diamond' = \{b'|_P \leq 0\}$$

of the convex function

$$b' = \sup_{\xi \in Z} b'_{\xi}.$$

Since the points  $x_{\pm}$  and  $x'_{\pm}$  are the normalization points of the corresponding Busemann functions, it follows that for all  $\zeta \in Z_{\pm}$  we have

$$\|b_{\zeta} - b'_{\zeta}\| \leq d(x_{\pm}, x'_{\pm}),$$

and therefore

$$(3-9) \quad \|b - b'\| \leq \max(d(x_-, x'_-), d(x_+, x'_+)).$$

Here and below,  $\|\cdot\|$  denotes the supremum norm of functions  $X \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ .

**Lemma 3.53** *There exist constants  $c(\Theta), \delta(\Theta) > 0$  such that the following holds:*

*If  $\max(d(x_1^-, x_1'^-), d(x_1^+, x_1'^+)) \leq d \leq \delta(\Theta)d(x_1^-, x_1'^+)$ , then  $\diamond \subset N_{c(\Theta)d}(\diamond' \cap \diamond)$ .*

**Proof** We may assume without loss of generality that the splitting (3-3) is trivial, ie  $X = X_1$ .

Take a point  $y \in \diamond$ . We connect  $y$  to the midpoint  $m$  of  $x_-x_+$  by the geodesic segment  $ym$  and consider the behavior of the convex function  $b$  along  $ym$ . This will provide an estimate for the time when the segment  $ym$  enters the other diamond  $\diamond'$ . In view of (3-9), we have

$$\diamond \cap \diamond' \subset \{b|_P \leq -d\}.$$

Since

$$b(m) \leq -\frac{1}{2} \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)d(x_-, x_+)$$

by Corollary 3.51, and

$$d(y, m) \leq \text{diam}(\diamond) \leq 2(\cos \rho_0(\Theta))^{-1} d(x_-, x_+)$$

by Lemma 3.52, the point  $z \in ym$  at distance

$$d(y, z) = \frac{4 \sin \epsilon_0(\Theta)}{\cos \rho_0(\Theta)} d$$

satisfies  $b(z) \leq -d$ . □

**Corollary 3.54** *There exist constants  $c(\Theta), \delta(\Theta) > 0$  such that the following holds: If also the segment  $x'_-x'_+ \subset P$  is  $\Theta$ -longitudinal, and if*

$$\max(d(x_-, x'_-), d(x_+, x'_+)) \leq d \leq \delta(\Theta)d(x_1^-, x_1^+),$$

then

$$\text{dist}_{\text{Haus}}(\diamond, \diamond') \leq c(\Theta)d.$$

**Proof** Note that  $d(x_1^\pm, x'_1^\pm) \leq d(x_\pm, x'_\pm)$ . By the triangle inequality,

$$(1 - 2\delta(\Theta)) \cdot d(x_1^-, x_1^+) \leq d(x_1'^-, x_1'^+) \leq (1 + 2\delta(\Theta)) \cdot d(x_1^-, x_1^+).$$

After replacing  $\delta$  by  $\delta(1 - 2\delta)$  and switching the roles of  $\diamond$  and  $\diamond'$ , the previous lemma yields that also  $\diamond' \subset N_{c(\Theta)d}(\diamond' \cap \diamond)$ . The assertion follows. □

Now we extend our results and estimate the Hausdorff distance between arbitrary  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  and  $\diamond' = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x'_-, x'_+)$  which do not have to lie in the same parallel set.

We first consider the euclidean building case. There, nearby diamonds have large overlap:

**Lemma 3.55** (nearby diamonds in euclidean buildings) *Let  $X$  be a euclidean building. There exist constants  $c(\Theta, \Theta'), \delta(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$  such that the following holds: If the segment  $x_-x_+$  is  $\Theta$ -regular and if*

$$\max(d(x_-, x'_-), d(x_+, x'_+)) \leq d \leq \delta(\Theta, \Theta')d(x_1^-, x_1^+),$$

then

$$\text{dist}_{\text{Haus}}(\diamond, \diamond') \leq c(\Theta, \Theta')d.$$

**Proof** According to Lemma 3.5, if  $\delta(\Theta, \Theta')$  is chosen sufficiently small, then the segments  $x'_-x'_+$  and  $x_\mp x'_\pm$  are  $\Theta'$ -regular.

Let  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+) \supset \diamond$  be an ambient parallel set as considered above. In order to find a point in the intersection  $P \cap \diamond'$  close to  $x_+$ , we apply Corollary 3.46 to the ambient Weyl cone  $V(x_-, \text{st}(\tau_+)) \supset \diamond$  and the  $\Theta'$ -regular segment  $x_-x'_+$  (or a ray extending it). We obtain a point  $y_+ \in x_-x'_+ \cap P$  at distance  $\leq (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta'))^{-1}d$  from  $x'_+$  and, consequently, distance  $\leq (1 + (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta'))^{-1})d$  from  $x_+$ .

Since  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, y_+) \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x'_+) \cap P$ , Corollary 3.54 yields estimates for the Hausdorff distances of  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, y_+)$  from the diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x'_+)$  and  $\diamond$ , and hence for the Hausdorff distance between the latter two diamonds. The estimates are linear in  $d$  with constants only depending on  $\Theta'$ . Note that all diamonds split off the same  $X_2$ -factor, and that the quantity  $d(x_1^-, x_1^+)$ , which appears as a bound in the hypothesis of Corollary 3.54, varies continuously with the pair  $(x_-, x_+)$ .

Similarly, working with an ambient Weyl cone  $V(x'_+, \text{st}(\tau'_-)) \supset \diamond'$  and the  $\Theta'$ -regular segment  $x_-x'_+$ , one obtains a point  $y_- \in x_-x'_+ \cap V(x'_+, \text{st}(\tau'_-))$  uniformly close to  $x'_-$ . Using the intermediate diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(y_-, x'_+) \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x'_+) \cap V(x'_+, \text{st}(\tau'_-))$ , one estimates the Hausdorff distance from  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x'_+)$  to  $\diamond'$ . □

We return to the general model space case and are now ready to show:

**Proposition 3.56** (continuity of diamonds) *The  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds in  $X$  depend continuously, with respect to the Hausdorff topology, on their  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular pair of tips.*

**Proof** If  $X$  is a euclidean building, this is a direct consequence of the previous lemma. We assume therefore that  $X$  is a symmetric space.

Consider a diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  and an ambient parallel set  $P$ . As a consequence of the Hausdorff distance estimates for diamonds in the same parallel set (see Corollary 3.54) there exists  $\delta > 0$  such that  $\diamond$  has Hausdorff distance  $< \frac{1}{2}\epsilon$  from all diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x'_-, x'_+)$  with  $x'_\pm \in B(x_\pm, \delta) \cap P$ .

Let  $U \subset \text{Isom}(X)$  be a neighborhood of the identity such that  $d(ux, x) < \frac{1}{2}\epsilon$  for all  $x \in N_\epsilon(\diamond)$  and all  $u \in U$ . Then the diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(ux'_-, ux'_+)$  with  $u \in U$  and  $x'_\pm \in B(x_\pm, \delta) \cap P$  are  $\epsilon$ -Hausdorff-close to  $\diamond$ . The pairs of tips of these diamonds form a neighborhood of  $(x_-, x_+)$  in  $X \times X$ , because the manifold  $\mathcal{P}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \subset \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}^- X \times \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}^+ X$  of type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel sets  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ , or of pairs  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  of opposite simplices  $\tau_\pm$  of types  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ , is a homogeneous space for the Lie group  $G = \text{Isom}_o(X)$ . □

### 3.8 Topology at infinity and partial bordification

We will describe the topologies on the visual compactification  $\bar{X} = X \cup \partial_\infty X$  and on the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -bordification  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} = X \cup \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  in terms of shadows and related “basic subsets”.

We need the following notions of shadows at infinity in  $\partial_\infty X$  and  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ :

**Definition 3.57** (shadows at infinity) (i) For points  $x, y \in X$  we define the *shadow* of the point  $y$  as seen from  $x$  by

$$\text{pSh}_{x,y} := \{\xi : y \in x\xi\} \subset \partial_\infty X,$$

and for  $r > 0$  the shadow of the open  $r$ -ball around  $y$  by

$$\text{bSh}_{x,y,r} := \{\xi : x\xi \cap B(y, r) \neq \emptyset\} \subset \partial_\infty X.$$

(ii) For points  $x, y \in X$  we define the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -*shadow* of the point  $y$  as seen from  $x$  by

$$\text{pSh}_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} := \{\tau : y \in V(x, \text{st}(\tau))\} \subset \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X,$$

and for  $r > 0$  the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -*shadow* of the open  $r$ -ball around  $y$  by

$$\text{bSh}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} := \{\tau : V(x, \text{st}(\tau)) \cap B(y, r) \neq \emptyset\} \subset \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X.$$

By coning off the shadows at infinity at points in  $X$  and removing large balls around their tips, we obtain the subsets of  $\bar{X}$  and  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  which we will use to describe and construct the natural topologies.

**Definition 3.58** (basic subsets) (i) For points  $x, y \in X$  and radii  $r > 0$ , we define the subsets

$$\text{pO}_{x,y} := \{z : z \neq y \in xz\} \subset X$$

and

$$\text{bO}_{x,y,r} := \{z : xz \cap B(y, r) \neq \emptyset\} \subset X,$$

and the *basic subsets*

$$\text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y} := \text{pO}_{x,y} \cup \text{pSh}_{x,y} \subset \bar{X},$$

$$\text{b}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y,r} := \text{bO}_{x,y,r} \cup \text{bSh}_{x,y,r} \subset \bar{X}.$$

(ii) For points  $x, y \in X$  and radii  $r > 0$ , we define the subsets

$$pO_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} := \{z : xz \text{ } \tau_{\text{mod}}\text{-regular and } z \neq y \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z)\} \subset X$$

and

$$bO_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} := \{z : xz \text{ } \tau_{\text{mod}}\text{-regular and } \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z) \cap B(y, r) \neq \emptyset\} \subset X,$$

and the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -basic subsets

$$p\bar{O}_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} := pO_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \cup pSh_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \subset \bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}},$$

$$b\bar{O}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} := bO_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \cup bSh_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \subset \bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}.$$

We observe the following relations between point and ball shadows:

$$bSh_{x,y,r} = \bigcup_{z \in B(y,r)} pSh_{x,z} \quad \text{and} \quad bSh_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} = \bigcup_{z \in B(y,r)} pSh_{x,z}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}.$$

There are analogous relations between point and ball type basic subsets:

$$bO_{x,y,r} = \bigcup_{z \in B(y,r)} pO_{x,z} \quad \text{and} \quad bO_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} = \bigcup_{z \in B(y,r)} pO_{x,z}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}.$$

We note that the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -versions of the shadows and basic subsets are generalizations of these to arbitrary rank and agree with them in rank one.

We first recall the description of the visual topology on the visual compactification  $\bar{X}$ .

**Fact 3.59** (i) For every point  $x \in X$ , the basic subsets  $bO_{x,\cdot,\cdot}$  form together with the open subsets of  $X$  a basis of the visual topology on  $\bar{X}$ .

(ii) For every ray  $x\xi \subset X$ , every sequence  $y_n \rightarrow \infty$  of points  $y_n \in x\xi$  and every bounded sequence of radii  $r_n > 0$ , the basic subsets  $bO_{x,y_n,r_n}$  form a neighborhood basis of  $\xi$ .

This restricts to the following description of the visual topology on  $\partial_\infty X$ :

**Fact 3.60** (i) For every point  $x \in X$ , the shadows  $bSh_{x,\cdot,\cdot}$  form a basis of the visual topology on  $\partial_\infty X$ . If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then also the shadows  $pSh_{x,\cdot}$  form a basis.

(ii) For every ray  $x\xi \subset X$ , every sequence  $y_n \rightarrow \infty$  of points  $y_n \in x\xi$  and every bounded sequence of radii  $r_n > 0$ , the shadows  $bSh_{x,y_n,r_n}$  form a neighborhood basis of  $\xi$ . If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then also the shadows  $pSh_{x,y_n}$  form a neighborhood basis. Moreover, if  $X$  is a symmetric space, then for  $x \neq y \in x\xi$  also the shadows  $bSh_{x,y,\cdot}$  form a neighborhood basis.

Now we construct natural topologies on  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  and, at least partially, on  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ .

**Lemma 3.61** *The subsets  $\text{bO}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  are open in  $X$ . If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then also the subsets  $\text{pO}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  are open.*

**Proof** The openness of  $\text{bO}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  follows from the semicontinuity of diamonds; see Lemma 3.33. If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then the openness of  $\text{pO}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  is a consequence of Corollary 3.46. □

**Lemma 3.62** *If  $xy$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular, then  $y \in B(y, r) \subset \text{bO}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  for all sufficiently small  $r > 0$ .*

**Proof** If  $r$  is sufficiently small, then the segments  $xz$  are  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular for all  $z \in B(y, r)$ . □

**Lemma 3.63** (i) *If  $z \in \text{bO}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ , then  $\text{b}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,z,s}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \subset \text{b}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  for some  $s > 0$ .*  
 (ii) *If  $X$  is a euclidean building and  $z \in \text{pO}_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ , then  $\text{b}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,z,s}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \subset \text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  for some  $s > 0$ .*

**Proof** (i) Due to the semicontinuity of diamonds (see Lemma 3.33) there exists  $s > 0$  such that for every  $z' \in B(z, s)$  the segment  $xz'$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular and the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z')$  still intersects the ball  $B(y, r)$ .

(ii) The argument is the same, but using Corollary 3.46. It implies that there exists  $s > 0$  such that for every  $z' \in B(z, s)$  the segment  $xz'$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular and the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z')$  still contains  $y$ . □

**Corollary 3.64** (i) *The subsets  $\text{b}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  form together with the open subsets of  $X$  the basis of a topology  $\mathcal{T}_x$  on  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ . If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then also the subsets  $\text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  form a basis.*

(ii) *For every simplex  $\tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ , every asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence  $y_n \rightarrow \infty$  in  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  and every bounded sequence of radii  $r_n > 0$ , the basic subsets  $\text{b}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y_n,r_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  form a neighborhood basis for  $\tau$  in  $(\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}, \mathcal{T}_x)$ . If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then also the subsets  $\text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{x,y_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  form a neighborhood basis. In particular,  $\mathcal{T}_x$  is first-countable.*



**Proof** (i) Suppose that  $\tau$  belongs to a finite intersection  $\bigcap_i \text{bSh}_{x,y_i,r_i}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ . This means that  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  intersects all balls  $B(y_i, r_i)$ . Let  $z \in V(x, \text{ost}(\tau)) - \{x\}$  be a point such that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z)$  also intersects them. Then  $z \in \bigcap_i \text{bO}_{x,y_i,r_i}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ . With the lemma it follows that  $\tau \in \text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,z,s}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \subset \bigcap_i \text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,y_i,r_i}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  for all sufficiently small  $s$ . Furthermore,  $\bigcap_i \text{bO}_{x,y_i,r_i}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  is open in  $X$ .

The subsets  $\text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,\cdot}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  are unions of subsets of the form  $\text{p}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,\cdot}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ . If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then conversely the subsets  $\text{p}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,\cdot}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  are unions of subsets of the form  $\text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,\cdot}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  by the last lemma.

(ii) Suppose that  $\tau \in \text{bSh}_{x,y,r}$  and that  $\text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,y_n,r_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \not\subset \text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,y,r}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  for all  $n$ . Then there exist points  $z_n \in B(y_n, r_n)$  such that  $xz_n$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular and  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z_n) \cap B(y, r) = \emptyset$ .

If  $X$  is locally compact, then after passing to a subsequence,  $xz_n$  subconverges to a ray  $x\zeta \subset V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  with  $\zeta \in \text{ost}(\tau)$ . Let  $w \in x\zeta$  be a point such that  $y \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, w)$ , and let  $w_n \in xz_n$  be points converging to it,  $w_n \rightarrow w$ . Then  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, w_n) \cap B(y, r) \neq \emptyset$  for large  $n$ , due to the semicontinuity of diamonds (see Lemma 3.33), and hence also  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z_n) \cap B(y, r) \neq \emptyset$ , a contradiction.

If  $X$  is a euclidean building, then it follows from Corollary 3.46 that  $y \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, z_n)$  for large  $n$ , which is also a contradiction.

Thus, the subsets  $\text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,y_n,r_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  form a neighborhood basis. If  $X$  is a euclidean building, it follows that also the smaller open subsets  $\text{p}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,y_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \subset \text{b}\overline{\text{O}}_{x,y_n,r_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  form a neighborhood basis. □

We compare now the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_x$  for different basepoints  $x$ .

By construction, they all restrict to the given topology on  $X$ .

Regarding the comparison of the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_x$  at infinity on  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  and on the entire bordification  $\overline{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ , we use that if a topological space is first-countable, then its topology is determined by the sequential convergence. Namely, a subset is a neighborhood of a point if and only if it cannot be avoided by a sequence converging to this point. We therefore compare sequential convergence for the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_x$ . We will do this only partially, namely for arbitrary sequences in  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ , but only for asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequences in  $X$ . This will be sufficient for the purposes of this paper.

We first observe that  $\mathcal{T}_x$ -convergence translates into Hausdorff convergence of diamonds and Weyl cones.

**Lemma 3.65** (i) *The convergence  $\tau_n \rightarrow \tau$  in  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  with respect to  $\mathcal{T}_x$  is equivalent to the Hausdorff convergence*

$$V(x, \text{st}(\tau_n)) \cap \bar{B}(x, R) \rightarrow V(x, \text{st}(\tau)) \cap \bar{B}(x, R)$$

*of truncated Weyl cones for all radii  $R > 0$ .*

(ii) *For an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  in  $X$ , the convergence  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$  in  $(\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}, \mathcal{T}_x)$  is equivalent to the Hausdorff convergence  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, x_n) \cap \bar{B}(x, R) \rightarrow V(x, \text{st}(\tau)) \cap \bar{B}(x, R)$  of truncated diamonds for all radii  $R > 0$*

**Proof** The first statement follows from the second one in view of Lemma 3.32.

For the second statement, suppose that  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$ . Then for every point  $y \in V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  and radius  $r > 0$ , the diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, x_n)$  intersect  $B(y, r)$  for all sufficiently large  $n$ . Hence,  $d(y, \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, x_n)) \rightarrow 0$  as  $n \rightarrow +\infty$ , and the continuity of diamonds (Proposition 3.56) implies that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, y) \subset N_{\epsilon_n}(\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, x_n))$  with a sequence  $\epsilon_n \rightarrow 0$ . Again in view of Lemma 3.32, this yields the asserted Hausdorff convergence. The converse direction is clear. □

**Corollary 3.66** *The topology  $\mathcal{T}_x$  on  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  is Hausdorff.*

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of first-countability and the last lemma, because it implies that limits of sequences are unique. □

We now compare the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_x$  on  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ . We do this by comparing them to the visual topology on  $\partial_{\infty} X$ . For every type  $\bar{\xi} \in \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ , there is the natural identification

$$(3-10) \quad \theta^{-1}(\bar{\xi}) \xrightarrow{1:1} \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$$

with the subspace  $\theta^{-1}(\bar{\xi}) \subset \partial_{\infty} X$ , assigning to a point  $\xi \in \partial_{\infty} X$  with type  $\theta(\xi) = \bar{\xi}$  the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplex  $\tau$  spanned by it,  $\xi \in \text{int}(\tau)$ .

**Lemma 3.67** *For every type  $\bar{\xi} \in \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  and every point  $x \in X$ , the bijection (3-10) is a homeomorphism with respect to the restrictions of the visual topology on  $\bar{X}$  to  $\theta^{-1}(\bar{\xi})$  and the topology  $\mathcal{T}_x$  on  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  to  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ .*

**Proof** Let  $(\xi_n)$  and  $\xi$  be a sequence and a point in  $\theta^{-1}(\bar{\xi}) \subset \partial_{\infty} X$ , and let  $(\tau_n)$  and  $\tau$  be the corresponding sequence and point in  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ , ie  $\xi_n \in \text{int}(\tau_n)$  and  $\xi \in \text{int}(\tau)$ .

We must show that  $\xi_n \rightarrow \xi$  if and only if  $\tau_n \rightarrow \tau$  with respect to the topologies in consideration.

Suppose that  $\tau_n \rightarrow \tau$  with respect to  $\mathcal{T}_x$ . Then  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau_n)) \rightarrow V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  by the previous lemma. In particular, increasingly long subsegments  $xy_n \subset x\xi_n \subset V(x, \text{st}(\tau_n))$  become arbitrarily close to segments  $x\bar{y}_n \subset V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ . We want to find Hausdorff-close segments in  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  of the same type  $\bar{\xi}$ . By the triangle inequality for  $\Delta$ -lengths (2-7),  $\|d_\Delta(x, y_n) - d_\Delta(x, \bar{y}_n)\| \leq d(y_n, \bar{y}_n) \rightarrow 0$  and, in a euclidean Weyl chamber through  $\bar{y}_n$  with tip  $x$ , we find a point  $z_n \in V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  with  $d_\Delta(x, z_n) = d_\Delta(x, y_n)$ . Then  $d(z_n, \bar{y}_n) = \|d_\Delta(z_n, \bar{y}_n)\| = \|d_\Delta(x, z_n) - d_\Delta(x, \bar{y}_n)\| \rightarrow 0$ , and hence  $d(z_n, y_n) \rightarrow 0$  by the triangle inequality. Moreover,  $\theta(xz_n) = \theta(xy_n) = \bar{\xi}$  and therefore  $z_n \in x\bar{\xi}$ , because  $\bar{\xi}$  is the only point in  $\text{st}(\tau)$  with type  $\bar{\xi}$ . It follows that  $x\xi_n \rightarrow x\bar{\xi}$ , ie  $\xi_n \rightarrow \bar{\xi}$ .

Conversely, suppose that  $\xi_n \rightarrow \xi$ , ie  $x\xi_n \rightarrow x\xi$ . Then any ball centered at  $x\xi$  is intersected by  $x\xi_n$  for all sufficiently large  $n$ . Thus,  $\tau_n \rightarrow \tau$  by our description of  $\mathcal{T}_x$ -neighborhood bases. □

**Corollary 3.68** *The restriction of the topology  $\mathcal{T}_x$  to  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  does not depend on  $x$ .*

**Definition 3.69** (visual topology) We call this topology on  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  the *visual topology*.

Now we show that the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_x$  agree on the entire bordification  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  “in  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular directions”. We reformulate the condition for  $\mathcal{T}_x$ -convergence for asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequences  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  given in Lemma 3.65 above, in order to show its independence from  $x$ . We do this separately in the symmetric space (locally compact) and euclidean building cases.

In the locally compact case, we can express  $\mathcal{T}_x$ -convergence in terms of accumulation at infinity (the limit set) in  $\bar{X}$ :

**Lemma 3.70** *Suppose that  $X$  is locally compact. Then  $x_n \rightarrow \tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  with respect to  $\mathcal{T}_x$  if and only if the accumulation set of  $(x_n)$  in  $\bar{X}$  (with respect to the visual topology of  $\bar{X}$ ) is contained in  $\text{ost}(\tau) \subset \partial_\infty X$ .*

**Proof** Since  $X$  is locally compact, the sequence  $(x_n)$  subconverges in both  $\bar{X}$  and  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ . The latter holds because the sequence of diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, x_n)$  Hausdorff

subconverges and, in view of Lemma 3.32, the Hausdorff sublimits must be type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  Weyl cones. Note also that  $(x_n)$  accumulates in  $\bar{X}$  only at the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular part  $\theta^{-1}(\text{ost}(\tau_{\text{mod}}))$  of  $\partial_\infty X$ , as a consequence of asymptotic uniform  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity.

Therefore, if the assertion is wrong, we may assume, after passing to a subsequence, that  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$  in  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  and  $x_n \rightarrow \xi' \in \text{ost}(\tau')$  in  $\bar{X}$  for different simplices  $\tau, \tau' \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ . But then  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, x_n) \rightarrow V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  according to Lemma 3.65. Since  $xx_n \rightarrow x\xi'$ , it follows that  $\xi' \in \text{st}(\tau)$ , a contradiction. □

In the euclidean building case, we can strengthen the condition of Hausdorff convergence of Weyl cones to initial coincidence up to increasing radii.

**Lemma 3.71** *Suppose that  $X$  is a euclidean building. Then  $x_n \rightarrow \tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  with respect to  $\mathcal{T}_x$  if and only if for every  $R > 0$  it holds that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x, x_n) \cap \bar{B}(x, R) = V(x, \text{st}(\tau)) \cap \bar{B}(x, R)$  for all sufficiently large  $n$ .*

**Proof** This is a consequence of Lemmas 3.65 and 3.48. □

**Corollary 3.72** *Whether an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  in  $X$  converges to a simplex  $\tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  in  $(\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}, \mathcal{T}_x)$  does not depend on  $x$ .*

**Proof** If  $X$  is locally compact, this follows immediately from Lemma 3.70. Assume therefore that  $X$  is a euclidean building.

Let  $x, x' \in X$  and suppose that  $x_n \rightarrow \tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  with respect to  $\mathcal{T}_x$ . By Lemma 3.71, there exists a sequence  $y_n \rightarrow \infty$  of points  $y_n \in xx_n \cap V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ . Let  $y'_n \in x'x_n$  be points uniformly close to the points  $y_n$ , eg such that  $d(y'_n, y_n) \leq d(x', x)$ . Then the sequence  $(y'_n)$  is contained in a tubular neighborhood (of radius  $d(x', x)$ ) of  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ , and hence also in a tubular neighborhood (of radius  $2d(x', x)$ ) of  $V(x', \text{st}(\tau))$ , because the two Weyl cones have finite Hausdorff distance ( $\leq d(x', x)$ ). The sequences  $(y_n)$  and  $(y'_n)$  inherit from  $(x_n)$  asymptotically uniform  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regularity.

Consider the subsegments  $x'z'_n = x'y'_n \cap V(x', \text{st}(\tau))$ . According to Corollary 3.46, the distances  $d(z'_n, y'_n)$  are uniformly bounded, and therefore  $z'_n \rightarrow \infty$ . Since

$$\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x', z'_n) \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x', x_n) \cap V(x', \text{st}(\tau)),$$

it follows, using again Lemma 3.32, that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x', x_n) \rightarrow V(x', \text{st}(\tau))$ . Hence,  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$  also with respect to  $\mathcal{T}_{x'}$ . □

The corollary justifies the following definition:

**Definition 3.73** (flag convergence) We say that an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  in  $X$  *flag converges* to a simplex  $\tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  if  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$  in  $(\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}, \mathcal{T}_x)$  for some basepoint  $x$ .

Now we can also make precise the coincidence of the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_x$  “in  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular directions”. Suppose that  $A \subset X$  is an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular subset, and consider the subset

$$\tilde{A}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} := A \cup \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X \subset \bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}.$$

**Corollary 3.74** The topology induced by  $\mathcal{T}_x$  on  $\tilde{A}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  does not depend on  $x$ .

**Definition 3.75** (topology of flag convergence) We call this topology on  $\tilde{A}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  the *topology of flag convergence*.

As shown above, the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_x$  and hence the topology of flag convergence on  $\tilde{A}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  are Hausdorff and first-countable. Neighborhood bases at infinity have been described in Corollary 3.64.

We further discuss the flag convergence of sequences.

A situation when an asymptotically uniformly regular sequence flag converges is when it stays close to a Weyl cone:

**Lemma 3.76** Suppose the asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  is contained in the tubular neighborhood of the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  Weyl cone  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ . Then  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$ .

**Proof** If  $X$  is locally compact, this follows from Lemma 3.70.

Suppose therefore that  $X$  is a euclidean building. Consider the points  $y_n$  where the segments  $xx_n$  exit the Weyl cone  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ , ie  $xy_n = xx_n \cap V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ . Then Corollary 3.46 implies that  $d(y_n, x_n)$  is bounded. Hence,  $y_n \rightarrow \infty$  is an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence in  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ , and  $x_n \in \text{p}\bar{O}_{x, y_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ . The basic subsets  $\text{p}\bar{O}_{x, y_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  form a neighborhood basis of  $\tau$ . Thus,  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$  also in this case. □

We give a name to this stronger form of flag convergence:

**Definition 3.77** (conical convergence; see [10, Definition 6.1]) We say that an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  in  $X$  *flag converges conically* to  $\tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  if it is contained in a tubular neighborhood of the Weyl cone  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ .

**Corollary 3.78** Let  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$  and  $V(x', \text{st}(\tau'))$  be type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  Weyl cones. Suppose that for some  $D > 0$  the intersection of their  $D$ -neighborhoods contains an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence. Then  $\tau = \tau'$ .

**Proof** If  $(x_n)$  is such an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence, then  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$  and  $x_n \rightarrow \tau'$ . The assertion follows from the Hausdorff property of the topologies  $\mathcal{T}_X$ . □

The following *convergence criterion* will be useful when  $X$  is not locally compact.

**Lemma 3.79** Let  $x_n \rightarrow \infty$  be an asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular sequence in  $X$ , and let  $(\tau_n)$  be a sequence in  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  such that for some point  $x \in X$  and some constant  $D \geq 0$  it holds that  $x_n \in \bar{N}_D(V(x, \text{st}(\tau_m)))$  for all  $m \geq n$ . Then the sequence  $(\tau_n)$  converges,  $\tau_n \rightarrow \tau \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ , and  $x_n \in \bar{N}_D(V(x, \text{st}(\tau)))$  for all  $n$ . In particular,  $x_n \rightarrow \tau$  conically.

**Proof** If  $X$  is locally compact, then there exists a convergent subsequence of simplices,  $\tau_{n_k} \rightarrow \tau$ . It follows that  $x_n \in \bar{N}_D(V(x, \text{st}(\tau)))$  for all  $n$ , and the assertion holds in this case.

Suppose therefore that  $X$  is a euclidean building (because otherwise  $X$  is locally compact). For suitable  $\Theta$ , the segments  $xx_n$  are  $\Theta$ -regular for large  $n$ . Let  $\tau'_n \in \text{pSh}_{x, x_n}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ . Applying Lemma 3.48, we obtain for any radius  $r > 0$  that

$$V(x, \text{st}(\tau'_n)) \cap \bar{B}(x, r) = V(x, \text{st}(\tau_m)) \cap \bar{B}(x, r)$$

for  $m \geq n \geq n_0(r)$ . Thus, both sides are independent of  $m$  and  $n$ , and isometric to

$$V(x, \text{st}(\tau_m)) \cap \bar{B}(x, r) = C(x, r)$$

for  $m \geq n_0(r)$ . The union of the nested family of cones  $C(x, r)$  as  $r \rightarrow +\infty$  is a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  Weyl cone  $V(x, \text{st}(\tau))$ . It follows that  $\tau_m \rightarrow \tau$  and  $x_n \in \bar{N}_D(V(x, \text{st}(\tau)))$ . □

### 3.9 Ultralimits of parallel sets, Weyl cones and diamonds

Let  $X$  be a model space.

For a sequence of basepoints  $\star_n \in X$  and a sequence of scale factors  $\lambda_n > 0$  with  $\omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n = 0$ , we consider the ultralimit

$$(X_\omega, \star_\omega) = \omega\text{-}\lim(\lambda_n X, \star_n)$$

of rescaled copies of  $X$ . We will use the following result:

**Theorem 3.80** (B Leeb and B Kleiner [13, Chapter 5])  *$X_\omega$  is a euclidean building of the same rank and type as the model space  $X$ .*

We will need later that certain families of subsets are closed under taking ultralimits.

Sequences of maximal flats in  $X$  ultraconverge to maximal flats in  $X_\omega$ ; see also [13, Chapter 5]: if  $F_n \subset X$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  are maximal flats such that  $\omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n d(F_n, \star_n) < +\infty$ , then

$$F_\omega := \omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n F_n \subset X_\omega$$

is a maximal flat. Furthermore, if  $\kappa_n: F_n \rightarrow F_{\text{mod}}$  are charts such that

$$\omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n d(\kappa_n^{-1}(0), \star_n) < +\infty$$

for the basepoint  $0 \in F_{\text{mod}}$ , then the ultralimit

$$(3-11) \quad \kappa_\omega^{-1} := \omega\text{-}\lim \kappa_n^{-1}: F_{\text{mod}} \rightarrow X_\omega$$

of the isometric embeddings  $\kappa_n^{-1}: \lambda_n F_{\text{mod}} \rightarrow \lambda_n X_n$  is an isometric embedding, and it is the inverse of a chart  $\kappa_\omega$  for  $F_\omega$ . (Note that  $\omega\text{-}\lim_n (\lambda_n F_{\text{mod}}, 0) \cong (F_{\text{mod}}, 0)$  canonically, because  $F_{\text{mod}}$  is self-similar, so  $(\lambda_n F_{\text{mod}}, 0) \cong (F_{\text{mod}}, 0)$  canonically, and locally compact.)

Euclidean Weyl sectors (chambers) ultraconverge to euclidean Weyl sectors (chambers) if their tips ultraconverge: Let  $V(x_n, \tau_n) \subset X_n$  be Weyl sectors and suppose that  $x_\omega = (x_n) \in X_\omega$  exists. Since sectors are contained in maximal flats, we may assume that  $V(x_n, \tau_n) \subset F_n$  and work with the charts  $\kappa_n$  and  $\kappa_\omega$ . Then  $(\partial_\infty \kappa_n) \tau_n \subset \partial_\infty F_{\text{mod}}$  is one of finitely many faces, and therefore  $\omega\text{-}\lim$  always the same face  $\bar{\tau}$ . We put  $\tau_\omega := (\partial_\infty \kappa_\omega^{-1}) \bar{\tau} \subset \partial_\infty F_\omega$  and obtain that

$$(3-12) \quad \omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n V(x_n, \tau_n) = V(x_\omega, \tau_\omega)$$

and, regarding types,  $\theta(\tau_\omega) = \theta(\tau_n)$  for  $\omega$ -all  $n$ . Applying (3-12) to the chambers  $\bar{\sigma} \supset \bar{\tau}$  in  $\partial_\infty F_{\text{mod}}$  and taking the union, one obtains in particular that

$$(3-13) \quad \omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n V(x_n, \text{st}(\tau_n) \cap \partial_\infty F_n) = V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega) \cap \partial_\infty F_\omega),$$

a fact which will be useful below.

Generalizing the fact for maximal flats, we will show next that parallel sets ultraconverge to parallel sets. Consider a sequence of parallel sets  $P_n = P(\tau_n^-, \tau_n^+) \subset X$  and assume that  $\omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n d(\star_n, P_n) < +\infty$ . Let

$$P_\omega := \omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n P_n \subset X_\omega.$$

**Lemma 3.81** (ultralimits of parallel sets)  *$P_\omega$  is again a parallel set, ie  $P_\omega = P(\tau_\omega^-, \tau_\omega^+)$  with a pair of opposite simplices  $\tau_\omega^\pm \subset \partial_\infty X_\omega$ . Moreover,  $\theta(\tau_\omega^\pm) = \theta(\tau_n^\pm)$  for  $\omega$ -all  $n$ .*

**Proof** We may assume without loss of generality that  $\star_n \in P_n$  and that  $\theta(\tau_n^\pm) = \tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  for all  $n$ .

In order to represent the  $P_n$  as parallel sets of geodesic lines, we fix a type  $\bar{\xi} \in \text{int}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  and denote by  $\xi_n \in \text{int}(\tau_n)$  the ideal points of type  $\theta(\xi_n) = \bar{\xi}$ . Then  $P_n = P(l_n)$  with the oriented geodesic line  $l_n \subset P_n$  extending the ray  $\star_n \xi_n$ .

The ultralimit of lines

$$l_\omega := \omega\text{-}\lim \lambda_n l_n \subset P_\omega$$

is again an oriented line of type  $\bar{\xi}$ . Let  $\xi_\omega := l_\omega(+\infty) \in \partial_\infty X_\omega$  denote its forward ideal endpoint, and let  $\tau_\omega^\pm \subset \partial_\infty X_\omega$  denote the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  simplices spanned by the ideal endpoints  $l_\omega(\pm\infty)$ .

Since every point in  $P_n$  is contained in a maximal flat  $F_n \supset l_n$ , and since sequences of maximal flats  $F_n \supset l_n$  ultraconverge to maximal flats  $F_\omega \supset l_\omega$ , we have that

$$P_\omega \subset P(l_\omega).$$

We must show that  $P_\omega$  fills out  $P(l_\omega)$ . Note that, as an ultralimit of subsets,  $P_\omega$  is closed.

Let  $x_\omega = (x_n) \in X_\omega$ . The ray  $x_\omega \xi_\omega \subset X_\omega$  is the ultralimit of the rays  $x_n \xi_n \subset X_n$ . We apply Propositions 3.43 and 3.44 to conclude that  $x_\omega \xi_\omega$  dives within uniformly bounded time into  $P_\omega$ . Namely, fix a constant  $d > 0$  and choose  $\Theta \ni \bar{\xi}$ . Let  $C'' := \max(C(\Theta, d), (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta))^{-1})$  with the constants appearing in these results. Let  $y_n \in$



$x_n \xi_n$  be the point at distance  $d(x_n, y_n) = C'' \cdot d(x_n, P_n)$ . Then  $y_n \in N_d(P_n)$ . (If  $X$  is a euclidean building, even  $y_n \in P_n$ .) The ultralimit point  $y_\omega \in x_\omega \xi_\omega$  is defined and has distance  $d(x_\omega, y_\omega) = C'' d(x_\omega, P_\omega) < +\infty$  from  $x_\omega$ . Since  $\lambda_n d \rightarrow 0$ , we have that  $y_\omega \in \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n N_d(P_n) = \omega\text{-lim } N_{\lambda_n d}(\lambda_n P_n) = N_0(P_\omega) = P_\omega$ . Thus, the ultralimit ray  $x_\omega \xi_\omega$  enters  $P_\omega$  within uniformly bounded time.

As a consequence, every geodesic line  $l'_\omega \subset X_\omega$  parallel to  $l_\omega$  must already be contained in  $P_\omega$ . This means that  $P_\omega = P(l_\omega) = P(\tau_\omega^-, \tau_\omega^+)$ . □

Using the result on parallel sets, we will deduce the ultraconvergence of Weyl cones from the ultraconvergence of Weyl sectors. Consider a sequence of Weyl sectors  $V(x_n, \tau_n) \subset X$  which ultraconverge as in (3-12). Then the corresponding Weyl cones ultraconverge, too:

**Lemma 3.82** (ultralimits of Weyl cones)  $\omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n V(x_n, \text{st}(\tau_n)) = V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega))$ .

**Proof** The left-hand side is the union of the ultralimits  $\omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n V(x_n, \sigma_n)$  for all sequences of chambers  $\sigma_n \supset \tau_n$  in  $\partial_\infty X$ . By (3-13), these ultralimits are euclidean Weyl chambers  $V(x_\omega, \sigma_\omega)$  with chambers  $\sigma_\omega \supset \tau_\omega$  in  $\partial_\infty X_\omega$ , ie  $\sigma_\omega \subset \text{st}(\tau_\omega)$ . This shows that

$$\omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n V(x_n, \text{st}(\tau_n)) \subset V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega)).$$

To verify the reverse inclusion, we work inside parallel sets containing the Weyl cones. Let  $\hat{\tau}_n \subset \partial_\infty X$  be faces  $x_n$ -opposite to the faces  $\tau_n$ . Then  $V(x_n, \text{st}(\tau_n)) \subset P_n = P(\hat{\tau}_n, \tau_n)$ .

Consider a sequence of maximal flats  $F_n \subset P_n$  containing the points  $x_n$ , and the ultralimit flat  $F_\omega = \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n F_n$ . Then  $\tau_n \subset \partial_\infty F_n$  and  $\tau_\omega \subset \partial_\infty F_\omega$ . Applying (3-13) yields that

$$V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega)) \cap F_\omega = V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega) \cap \partial_\infty F_\omega) = \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n V(x_n, \text{st}(\tau_n) \cap \partial_\infty F_n).$$

The union of all flats  $F_\omega$  arising in this way as ultralimits is precisely  $P_\omega := \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n P_n$ . Hence,

$$V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega)) \cap P_\omega \subset \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n V(x_n, \text{st}(\tau_n)).$$

Now we use that parallel sets ultraconverge to parallel sets. By Lemma 3.81,  $P_\omega = P(\hat{\tau}_\omega, \tau_\omega)$  with a face  $\hat{\tau}_\omega$  which is  $x_\omega$ -opposite to  $\tau_\omega$ . It follows that  $V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega)) \subset P_\omega$  and

$$V(x_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega)) \subset \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n V(x_n, \text{st}(\tau_n)),$$

which finishes the proof. □

Finally, we describe ultralimits of sequences of diamonds. Consider a sequence of  $\Theta$ -regular segments  $x_n^-x_n^+ \subset X$  and the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds  $\diamond_n := \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_n^-, x_n^+)$  spanned by them. Let

$$\diamond_\omega := \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n \diamond_n.$$

**Lemma 3.83** (ultralimits of diamonds) *If the sequence of segments  $x_n^-x_n^+$  ultraconverges to a segment  $x_\omega^-x_\omega^+ \subset X_\omega$ , then  $\diamond_\omega = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_\omega^-, x_\omega^+)$ .*

**Proof** We recall that diamonds are forever. In order to work inside sequences of parallel sets, let  $(\tau_n^-, \tau_n^+)$  be pairs of  $(x_n^-, x_n^+)$ -opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  simplices in  $\partial_\infty X$ . Putting  $P_n := P(\tau_n^-, \tau_n^+)$  and  $V_n^\pm := V(x_n^\mp, \text{st}(\tau_n^\pm)) \subset P_n$ , we have that

$$\diamond_n = V_n^- \cap V_n^+ \subset P_n.$$

Lemma 3.81 implies that

$$P_\omega := \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n P_n = P(\tau_\omega^-, \tau_\omega^+)$$

with a pair  $(\tau_\omega^-, \tau_\omega^+)$  of  $(x_\omega^-, x_\omega^+)$ -opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  simplices in  $\partial_\infty X_\omega$ . Moreover, by Lemma 3.82,

$$V_\omega^\pm := \omega\text{-lim } \lambda_n V_n^\pm = V(x_\omega^\mp, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^\pm)) \subset P_\omega.$$

Clearly,

$$\diamond_\omega \subset V_\omega^- \cap V_\omega^+ \subset P_\omega,$$

and we must prove that  $\diamond_\omega = V_\omega^- \cap V_\omega^+$ .

Since the segment  $x_\omega^-x_\omega^+$  is  $\Theta$ -regular, and hence, in particular, is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular, the intersection of interiors  $\text{int}(V_\omega^-) \cap \text{int}(V_\omega^+)$  is dense in  $V_\omega^- \cap V_\omega^+$ . Since  $\diamond_\omega$  is closed (being an ultralimit of subsets), it thus suffices to show that  $\text{int}(V_\omega^-) \cap \text{int}(V_\omega^+) \subset \diamond_\omega$ .

Let  $z_\omega \in \text{int}(V_\omega^-) \cap \text{int}(V_\omega^+)$ . We may assume that  $z_\omega = (z_n)$  with  $z_n \in P_n$ . Since  $z_\omega \in \text{int}(V_\omega^\pm)$ , the segments  $x_\omega^-z_\omega$  and  $z_\omega x_\omega^+$  are longitudinal. It follows that the segments  $x_n^-z_n$  and  $z_n x_n^+$  are longitudinal for  $\omega$ -all  $n$ . So,  $z_n \in V_n^- \cap V_n^+ = \diamond_n$  and  $z_\omega \in \diamond_\omega$ . □

## 4 Modified Carnot–Finsler metric and its contraction property

### 4.1 A modified Carnot–Finsler type metric on diamonds

Suppose that  $X$  is a model space.

**Definition 4.1** A broken path  $x_0x_2 \dots x_k$  in a diamond  $\diamond$  is called *nonlongitudinal* if each segment  $x_i x_{i+1}$  of this path is nonlongitudinal.

On the diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  we introduce the *pseudometric*  $d_\diamond$  which is obtained by infimizing the length of broken nonlongitudinal paths  $x_0x_1 \dots x_k$  in  $\diamond$  with  $x_0 = x_-, x_k = x_+$ . The triangle inequality and symmetry are clearly satisfied by  $d_\diamond$ , but, in general,  $d_\diamond$  is only a pseudometric, because points may have infinite distance.

The modified metric  $d_\diamond$  is larger than the original metric:

$$d_\diamond \geq d|_\diamond.$$

It obviously agrees with  $d$  in the nonlongitudinal directions, ie for a nonlongitudinal segment  $xy \subset \diamond$  we have  $d_\diamond(x, y) = d(x, y)$ . However,  $d_\diamond$  is strictly larger than  $d$  in the longitudinal directions:

**Lemma 4.2** For a longitudinal segment  $xy$  in  $\diamond$ , we have

$$d_\diamond(x, y) \geq C \cdot d(x, y)$$

with a constant  $C = C(\theta(\vec{x}\vec{y})) > 1$  depending continuously on the direction type  $\theta(\vec{x}\vec{y})$ .

**Proof** We choose an  $(x_-, x_+)$ -opposite type  $(\iota\tau_{\text{mod}}, \tau_{\text{mod}})$  pair of simplices  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ . Then  $\diamond \subset P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ . The longitudinal segment  $xy$  can be extended inside  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  to a longitudinal ray  $x\xi$ , ie  $\xi \in \text{ost}(\tau_+) \cup \text{ost}(\tau_-)$ , say  $\xi \in \text{ost}(\tau_+)$ . Along  $xy$ , the Busemann function  $b_\xi$  decays with minimal possible slope  $\equiv -1$ . On the other hand, along any *non*-longitudinal segment in  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ , and hence along any piecewise nonlongitudinal geodesic path in  $\diamond$  connecting  $x$  to  $y$ , it has slope  $\geq -1 + \epsilon$  with a constant  $\epsilon > 0$  depending continuously on the (Tits) distance of  $\xi$  from  $\partial \text{st}(\tau_+)$ , which in turn depends only on  $\theta(\vec{x}\vec{y})$ . It follows that  $(1 - \epsilon) \cdot d_\diamond(x, y) \geq d(x, y)$ , whence the assertion.  $\square$

Whether the modified metric  $d_\diamond$  can be bounded above in terms of the original metric depends on the geometry of the face type  $\tau_{\text{mod}} \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . Note that<sup>1</sup>

$$\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}}) = W_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}\sigma_{\text{mod}} \subset a_{\text{mod}}$$

is a proper convex subcomplex, because  $X$  has no euclidean factor, and hence is contained in a closed hemisphere. In fact, it is contained in all closed hemispheres with

<sup>1</sup>Here  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  refers to the star *within*  $a_{\text{mod}}$ .

center in  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ . (Recall that chambers have diameter  $\leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ .) Thus,  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  is itself a hemisphere if and only if  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  is a root type vertex,  $\tau_{\text{mod}} = \{\bar{\zeta}\}$ , and the spherical Coxeter complex  $(a_{\text{mod}}, W)$  is reducible with the 0–sphere  $\{\pm\bar{\zeta}\}$  as a join factor.

**Lemma 4.3** *If  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  is not a closed hemisphere, then*

$$d_{\diamond} \leq C \cdot d|_{\diamond}$$

with a constant  $C = C(\sigma_{\text{mod}}) > 1$ .

**Proof** We must bound above the  $\diamond$ –length of longitudinal segments.

Let  $P(\tau_-, \tau_+) \supset \diamond$  be an ambient parallel set for an  $(x_-, x_+)$ –opposite pair of simplices  $(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  of type  $(\tau_{\text{mod}}^-, \tau_{\text{mod}}^+)$ . Then a longitudinal segment  $x'_-x'_+ \subset \diamond$  is contained in a maximal flat  $F \subset P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$ . Assuming that the segment is oriented so that  $x'_\pm \in V(x'_\mp, \text{ost}(\tau_\pm))$ , we have  $\diamond' := \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x'_-, x'_+) \subset \diamond$ , and the “flat diamond”  $\diamond' \cap F$  is the intersection of the two flat sectors  $V(x'_\mp, \text{st}(\tau_\pm)) \cap F = V(x'_\mp, \text{st}(\tau_\pm) \cap \partial_\infty F)$ . Note that  $\tau_\pm \subset \partial_\infty F$ , so  $\text{st}(\tau_\pm) \cap \partial_\infty F \cong \text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$ .

We will bound  $d_{\diamond}(x'_-, x'_+)$  above by connecting the points  $x'_\pm$  inside  $\diamond' \cap F$  by a piecewise nonlongitudinal path with controlled length. This can be done by a path  $x'_-yx'_+$  in the boundary of  $\diamond' \cap F$ . To see this, choose a pair of antipodes  $\zeta_\pm \in \tau_\pm$  and note that  $\text{st}(\tau_\pm) \subset \bar{B}(\zeta_\pm, \frac{\pi}{2})$  is a proper convex subset. Accordingly, the convex subcomplexes  $\text{st}(\tau_\pm) \cap \partial_\infty F$  of the apartment  $\partial_\infty F$  are proper subsets of the “complementary” closed hemispheres  $\bar{B}(\zeta_\pm, \frac{\pi}{2}) \cap \partial_\infty F$ . Since the open hemispheres are disjoint, a ray  $x'_-\eta_+$  in the boundary of the flat sector  $V(x'_-, \text{st}(\tau_+) \cap \partial_\infty F)$  with  $\eta_+ \in \text{st}(\tau_+) \cap B(\zeta_+, \frac{\pi}{2}) \cap \partial_\infty F$  intersects the boundary of the other flat sector  $V(x'_+, \text{st}(\tau_-) \cap \partial_\infty F)$ , and we take  $y$  to be the (unique) intersection point. The path  $x_-yx_+$  in the boundary of  $\diamond' \cap F$  then consists of two nonlongitudinal segments contained in boundaries of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ –Weyl cones.

To control the length of the path  $x'_-yx'_+$ , we note that, since there are only finitely many face types  $\tau_{\text{mod}} \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ , and hence only finitely many possible isometry types of subcomplexes  $\text{st}(\tau_\pm) \cap \partial_\infty F$ , the ray  $x'_-\eta_+$  in the boundary of  $V(x'_-, \text{st}(\tau_+) \cap \partial_\infty F)$  can be chosen so that  $\angle_{\text{Tits}}(\eta_+, \zeta_+) \leq \frac{\pi}{2} - \delta$  for a uniform  $\delta = \delta(\sigma_{\text{mod}}) > 0$ . Then  $\angle_y(x_-, x_+) \geq \delta$ . The triangle  $\Delta(x'_-, y, x'_+)$  lies in the flat  $F$ , and elementary euclidean geometry yields an estimate of the form  $d(x'_-, x'_+) \geq c \cdot (d(x'_-, y) + d(y, x'_+))$  with a constant  $c = c(\delta) > 0$ , and hence  $d_{\diamond}(x'_-, x'_+) \leq c^{-1} \cdot d(x'_-, x'_+)$ . □

Thus, under the assumption of the lemma, the modified metric  $d_{\diamond}$  is uniformly equivalent to the original metric  $d$  on  $X$ , and in particular it is an honest metric. Furthermore, the distortion is small in almost-nonlongitudinal directions:

**Lemma 4.4** *If  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  is not a closed hemisphere and if  $xy \subset \diamond$  is a longitudinal segment with direction  $\epsilon$ -close to a nonlongitudinal direction, then*

$$d_{\diamond}(x, y) \leq (1 + C\epsilon) \cdot d(x, y)$$

with the constant  $C$  from the previous lemma.

**Proof** For the proof, we switch notation (replacing  $x$  and  $y$  by  $x'_{\pm}$ ) and use some of the notation in the proof of the previous lemma.

Suppose that the direction of the longitudinal segment  $x'_-x'_+$  is  $\epsilon$ -close to a nonlongitudinal direction. Then a ray  $x'_-\eta_+$  in the boundary of  $V(x'_-, \text{st}(\tau_+) \cap \partial_{\infty}F)$  can be chosen so that  $\angle_{x'_-}(x'_+, \eta_+) \leq \epsilon$ . Let  $y'_+ \in x'_-\eta_+$  be the point with  $d(x'_-, y'_+) = d(x'_-, x'_+)$ . Note that the triangle  $\Delta(x'_-, y'_+, x'_+)$  lies in the flat  $F$  and that its side  $x'_-y'_+$  is nonlongitudinal.

If  $y'_+ \in \diamond$ , then we can estimate, using the previous lemma,

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\diamond}(x'_-, x'_+) &\leq d_{\diamond}(x'_-, y'_+) + d_{\diamond}(y'_+, x'_+) \leq d(x'_-, x'_+) + C \cdot d(y'_+, x'_+) \\ &\leq (1 + C\epsilon) \cdot d(x'_-, x'_+). \end{aligned}$$

Otherwise, the segment  $x'_-y'_+$  leaves  $\diamond'$ , equivalently, the Weyl cone  $V(x'_+, \text{st}(\tau_-))$  in a point  $y'$ . Then the path  $x'_-y'x'_+$  consists of two nonlongitudinal segments and, according to the triangle inequality, has length at most

$$d(x'_-, y'_+) + d(y'_+, x'_+) \leq (1 + \epsilon) \cdot d(x'_-, x'_+). \quad \square$$

Suppose now that  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  is a hemisphere, which means as mentioned above that  $\tau_{\text{mod}} = \{\bar{\zeta}\}$  is a root type vertex and  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}}) = \bar{B}(\bar{\zeta}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ , ie the spherical Coxeter complex  $(a_{\text{mod}}, W)$  is reducible and splits off the 0-sphere  $\{\pm\bar{\zeta}\}$  as a join factor.

Accordingly,  $\tau_{\pm} = \{\zeta_{\pm}\}$  are antipodal root type vertices,  $\text{st}(\tau_{\pm}) = \bar{B}(\zeta_{\pm}, \frac{\pi}{2})$  and the model space splits off a rank one factor, ie it splits metrically as the product

$$X \cong T \times X'$$

of a rank one symmetric space or a metric tree  $T$  and a model space  $X'$  of corank one. The ideal vertices in  $\partial_{\text{Tits}}T \subset \partial_{\text{Tits}}X$  are the type  $\bar{\zeta}$  ideal points. The type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel

sets are of the form  $l \times X'$  for a geodesic line  $l \subset T$ , the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Weyl cones are of the form  $r \times X'$  for a geodesic ray  $r \subset T$ , and the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds are of the form  $s \times X'$  for a geodesic segment  $s \subset T$ . A segment in  $X$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular if and only if it is not contained in a cross-section  $\text{pt} \times X'$ . The longitudinal segments in  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds are precisely the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular ones. Thus, the nonlongitudinal paths are precisely the paths contained in cross-sections.

It follows that two points in  $\diamond$  have finite  $\diamond$ -distance if and only if they lie in the same cross-section, and on cross-sections  $d_{\diamond}$  coincides with  $d$ . In particular,  $d_{\diamond}$  is not an honest metric in this case.

**Remark 8** Our discussion shows that any two points  $x, y \in \diamond$  with finite  $\diamond$ -distance can be connected by a polygonal path in  $\diamond$  with  $d$ -length  $d_{\diamond}(x, y)$  consisting of at most two nonlongitudinal segments.

## 4.2 Contraction properties of nearest-point projections in euclidean buildings

In this section, let  $X$  be a euclidean building without flat factor.

Recall that for a closed convex subset  $C \subset X$  the nearest-point projection  $\pi_C: X \rightarrow C$  is 1-Lipschitz. In this section, we give sharper contraction estimates for projections to diamonds. This is based on the following general observation. Here,  $\text{int}(\Sigma_{\bar{x}}C)$  denotes the interior of  $\Sigma_{\bar{x}}C$  as a subset of  $\Sigma_{\bar{x}}X$ .

**Lemma 4.5** *For  $\epsilon > 0$  and  $A > 1$  there exists  $R = R(\epsilon, A) > 0$  such that the following holds:*

*Let  $C \subset X$  be closed convex, and let  $x, y \in X$  be points with projections  $\bar{x} = \pi_C(x)$  and  $\bar{y} = \pi_C(y)$ . Suppose that  $d(x, y) < A \cdot d(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  and  $d(x, \bar{x}) > R \cdot d(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ . Then the direction  $\vec{\bar{x}\bar{y}}$  is  $\epsilon$ -close to a direction in  $\Sigma_{\bar{x}}C - \text{int}(\Sigma_{\bar{x}}C)$ .*

**Proof** The assertion is scale-invariant and we may therefore assume that  $d(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = 1$ .

Since  $\bar{x} = \pi_C(x)$ , we have that  $\angle_{\bar{x}}(\vec{\bar{x}\bar{x}}, \Sigma_{\bar{x}}C) \geq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . In particular,  $\angle_{\bar{x}}(x, \bar{y}) \geq \frac{\pi}{2}$  and, analogously,  $\angle_{\bar{y}}(y, \bar{x}) \geq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . To see that these angles can exceed  $\frac{\pi}{2}$  only by arbitrarily little if  $R$  is sufficiently large, we proceed as follows using triangle comparison.

In order to bound  $\cos \angle_{\bar{x}}(x, \bar{y})$  from below, we divide the quadrilateral  $\square(x, y, \bar{y}, \bar{x})$  into the triangles  $\Delta(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, y)$  and  $\Delta(\bar{x}, x, y)$ . Let  $D = d(\bar{x}, y)$ . Applying comparison to  $\Delta(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, y)$  yields for the angle  $\alpha = \angle_{\bar{x}}(\bar{y}, y)$  that

$$\cos \alpha \geq \frac{1}{D}$$

because  $\angle_{\bar{y}}(\bar{x}, y) \geq \frac{\pi}{2}$ . And applying comparison to  $\Delta(\bar{x}, x, y)$  yields for the angle  $\beta = \angle_{\bar{x}}(x, y)$  that

$$\sin \beta \leq \frac{A}{D}$$

because  $d(x, y) \leq A$ . It follows for  $\angle_{\bar{x}}(x, \bar{y}) \leq \alpha + \beta$  that

$$\cos \angle_{\bar{x}}(x, \bar{y}) \geq \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta \geq \frac{1}{D} \sqrt{1 - \frac{A^2}{D^2}} - \frac{A}{D} \sqrt{1 - \frac{1}{D^2}}.$$

The right-hand side tends to 0 as  $R \rightarrow +\infty$ . Thus,  $\angle_{\bar{x}}(x, \bar{y}) < \frac{\pi}{2} + \epsilon$  for suitable  $R \geq R(\epsilon, A)$ .

Now let  $v \in \Sigma_{\bar{x}}C$  be the direction where the shortest arc in  $\Sigma_{\bar{x}}X$  connecting  $\vec{\bar{x}}x$  to  $\vec{\bar{x}}\bar{y}$  enters  $\Sigma_{\bar{x}}C$ . Since  $\angle_{\bar{x}}(\vec{\bar{x}}x, v) \geq \frac{\pi}{2}$ , it follows that  $\angle_{\bar{x}}(v, \vec{\bar{x}}\bar{y}) < \epsilon$ . By its definition,  $v \notin \text{int}(\Sigma_{\bar{x}}C)$ . □

In the special case of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$ , the lemma yields (see Lemma 3.34):

**Corollary 4.6** *If  $C = \diamond$ , then the direction  $\vec{\bar{x}}\bar{y}$  (in the above lemma) is  $\epsilon$ -close to a nonlongitudinal direction.*

We apply this observation to estimate the local contraction of projections. The main result of this section is the following estimate, which is interesting in itself:

**Theorem 4.7** (contraction estimate) *For a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$ , the map*

$$(X, d) \xrightarrow{\pi_{\diamond}} (\diamond, d_{\diamond})$$

*is locally 1-Lipschitz outside  $\diamond$ .*

**Proof** Suppose that  $xy$  is a segment disjoint from  $\diamond$ , and let  $r > 0$  be so small that  $xy$  stays outside the  $r$ -neighborhood of  $\diamond$ . We fix constants  $\epsilon, A^{-1} \simeq 0$  and subdivide  $xy$  into subsegments of length  $< R^{-1}r$  with the constant  $R = R(\epsilon, A)$  from

Lemma 4.5. We project the subdivision points to  $\diamond$ . According to the corollary, the segments connecting the projections of subsequent subdivision points have directions  $\epsilon$ -close to nonlongitudinal directions or have length at most  $A^{-1}$  times the length of the corresponding subdivision segment.

If  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}}) \subset a_{\text{mod}}$  is not a hemisphere, then the modified metric  $d_{\diamond}$  is uniformly equivalent to the original metric  $d|_{\diamond}$  and almost undistorted in almost nonlongitudinal directions; see Lemmas 4.3 and 4.4. Denoting by  $\bar{c}$  the polygonal path in  $\diamond$  connecting the projections of the subdivision points, and by  $L$  and  $L_{\diamond}$  the lengths measured with respect to the metrics  $d$  and  $d_{\diamond}$ , we obtain

$$d_{\diamond}(\pi_{\diamond}(x), \pi_{\diamond}(y)) \leq L_{\diamond}(\bar{c}) \leq (1 + C\epsilon) \cdot L(\bar{c}) + \frac{C}{A} \cdot d(x, y) \leq \left(1 + C\left(\epsilon + \frac{1}{A}\right)\right) \cdot d(x, y)$$

with the constant  $C$  of Lemma 4.3. The assertion follows in this case by letting  $\epsilon, A^{-1} \rightarrow 0$ .

Otherwise, if  $\text{st}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  is a hemisphere, the assertion becomes trivial: The euclidean building splits as the product  $X \cong T \times X'$  of a metric tree  $T$  and a euclidean building  $X'$ , and the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds are of the form  $\diamond = s \times X'$  for segments  $s \subset T$  (see above). The projection has the form  $\pi_{\diamond} = \pi_s \times \text{id}_{X'}$  with the nearest-point projection  $\pi_s: T \rightarrow s$ . Outside  $\diamond$ , the  $\pi_s$ -component is locally constant, so  $\pi_{\diamond}$  locally maps into one cross-section. The assertion holds, because  $d_{\diamond}$  and  $d$  agree on cross-sections.  $\square$

## 5 Regular implies Morse

In this section we prove the main result of this paper, the *Morse lemma* for  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesics in model spaces, Theorem 1.3 in the introduction.

### 5.1 Rectifiable paths in euclidean buildings

Let  $X$  be a euclidean building.

It is natural to ask (compare the definitions in Sections 3.1 and 3.2):

**Question 5.1** Are  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular paths in euclidean buildings contained in type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel sets as longitudinal paths?

The goal of this section is to answer the question affirmatively for locally rectifiable paths; see Theorem 5.6 below.



We begin by discussing basic properties of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular paths  $c: I \rightarrow X$ .

The segment  $c(t)c(s)$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -regular for  $\pm s > \pm t$  and its  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -direction

$$\tau_\pm(\overrightarrow{c(t)c(s)}) \subset \Sigma_{c(t)}X$$

at  $c(t)$  is therefore well defined.

**Lemma 5.2** *Let  $t \in I$  be such that  $\pm t$  is not maximal in  $\pm I$ . Then the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -direction  $\tau_\pm(\overrightarrow{c(t)c(s)})$  for  $\pm s > \pm t$  does not depend on  $s$ , ie there is a well-defined type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  simplex  $\tau_\pm(t) \subset \Sigma_{c(t)}X$  such that*

$$\tau_\pm(\overrightarrow{c(t)c(s)}) = \tau_\pm(t) \quad \text{for } \pm s > \pm t.$$

**Proof** The direction  $\overrightarrow{c(t)c(s)} \in \Sigma_{c(t)}X$  varies continuously with  $s$ , and the type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  open stars are the connected components of the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -regular part of  $\Sigma_{c(t)}X$ . The direction must therefore remain in the same open star. □

**Lemma 5.3** *For  $[a, b] \subset I$  and  $t \in (a, b)$ , the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -directions  $\tau_\pm(t)$  are opposite to each other if and only if  $c(t) \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ .*

**Proof** The segment  $c(t)c(a)$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^-$ -regular and  $c(t)c(b)$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^+$ -regular. Hence,  $c(t)$  can only lie in the interior of  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$  and, according to the description (3-1) of the interior of diamonds, it does so if and only if the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -directions  $\tau_-(\overrightarrow{c(t)c(a)}) = \tau_-(t)$  and  $\tau_+(\overrightarrow{c(t)c(b)}) = \tau_+(t)$  of these segments at  $c(t)$  are opposite to each other. □

As a consequence of these two lemmas, we obtain a “local–global” equivalence for the straightness of triples on the path:

**Corollary 5.4** *For  $[a', b'] \subset [a, b] \subset I$  and  $t \in (a', b')$ , we have*

$$c(t) \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b)) \iff c(t) \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a'), c(b')).$$

Another useful consequence is:

**Corollary 5.5** *If  $[a', b'] \subset [a, b] \subset I$  and if  $c(a'), c(b') \in \diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ , then the segment  $c(a')c(b')$  is longitudinal in  $\diamond$ .*

**Proof** With the last lemma, we see that the pair of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$ -directions  $\tau_\pm(a')$  is opposite, as well as the pair  $\tau_\pm(b')$ . The assertion then follows eg from Corollary 3.38. □

The main result of this section is a positive answer to Question 5.1 for arbitrary (ie possibly nondiscrete) euclidean buildings in the rectifiable uniform case:

**Theorem 5.6** *Let  $X$  be a euclidean building. Then every rectifiable  $\Theta$ -regular path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow X$  is contained in the  $\Theta$ -diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\Theta}(c(a), c(b))$  spanned by its endpoints and is longitudinal in  $\diamond$ .*

We break the proof up into several steps.

We observe first that, arguing by contradiction, we may assume that the path does not touch the diamond at all except at its endpoints:

**Lemma 5.7** *If the path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow X$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular and not contained in  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ , then there exists a nondegenerate subinterval  $[a', b'] \subset [a, b]$  such that  $c(t) \notin \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a'), c(b'))$  for all  $t \in (a', b')$ .*

**Proof** Write  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ , and let  $(a', b')$  be a connected component of the nonempty open subset  $\{t \in I: c(t) \notin \diamond\}$ . Then  $c(a'), c(b') \in \diamond$  and, invoking Corollary 5.5, we know that the segment  $c(a')c(b')$  is longitudinal, and hence that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a'), c(b')) \subseteq \diamond$ . □

The intuition behind the proof of the theorem is that it “costs length” for a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path to move outside the diamond of its endpoints, due to the contraction properties of projections as described in Section 4.2. The key step in the proof is:

**Lemma 5.8** *Let  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow X$  be a path such that the oriented segment  $c(a)c(b)$  connecting its endpoints is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular and such that  $c(t) \notin \diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$  for all  $t \in (a, b)$ . Then*

$$L(c) \geq d_{\diamond}(c(a), c(b)).$$

**Proof** Let  $\pi_{\diamond}: X \rightarrow \diamond$  denote the nearest-point projection. We consider the projected curve  $\bar{c} := \pi_{\diamond} \circ c: I \rightarrow \diamond$ . Since  $c$  lies outside  $\diamond$  except for its endpoints, Theorem 4.7 yields that

$$L(c) \geq L_{\diamond}(\bar{c}),$$

where  $L_{\diamond}$  is the length measured with respect to the modified metric  $d_{\diamond}$ . The assertion follows, because  $L_{\diamond}(\bar{c}) \geq d_{\diamond}(c(a), c(b))$ . □

As a consequence, almost distance-minimizing (see Definition 2.1) uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular paths must touch the diamond of their endpoints:

**Lemma 5.9** *There exists  $\epsilon = \epsilon(\Theta) > 0$  such that the following holds: if the path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow X$  is  $\Theta$ -regular and  $\epsilon$ -distance-minimizing, then  $c(t) \in \diamond$  for some  $t \in (a, b)$ .*

**Proof** Due to the compactness of  $\Theta$ , there exists an  $\epsilon = \epsilon(\Theta) > 0$  such that  $d_{\diamond} > (1 + \epsilon) \cdot d$  for  $\Theta$ -longitudinal pairs of points in  $\diamond$ ; see Lemma 4.2. The assertion then follows from the previous lemma. □

Based on Corollary 5.4, we can extend the last result to rectifiable paths of arbitrary length, because these contain arbitrarily efficient (ie almost distance-minimizing) subpaths:

**Lemma 5.10** *If  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow X$  is  $\Theta$ -regular and rectifiable, then  $c(t) \in \diamond$  for some  $t \in (a, b)$ .*

**Proof** Let  $\epsilon = \epsilon(\Theta)$  be the constant from Lemma 5.9. There exists a nondegenerate subinterval  $[a', b'] \subset [a, b]$  such that the subpath  $c|_{[a', b']}$  is  $\epsilon$ -distance-minimizing; see Lemma 2.2. Then Lemma 5.9 implies that  $c(t) \in \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a'), c(b'))$  for some  $t \in (a', b')$ . With Corollary 5.4, it follows that also  $c(t) \in \diamond$ . □

We are ready to conclude the proof of the theorem.

**Proof of Theorem 5.6** Suppose that  $c$  is not contained in  $\diamond_{\Theta}(c(a), c(b))$ . Then, by  $\Theta$ -regularity, it is also not contained in  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ . According to Lemma 5.7, after replacing  $c$  by a subpath, we may assume that  $c(t) \notin \diamond$  for all  $t \in (a, b)$ . But this contradicts Lemma 5.10, so  $c$  is contained in  $\diamond_{\Theta}(c(a), c(b))$ . It is longitudinal by Corollary 5.5. □

As a consequence of the theorem, we obtain with Lemma 3.11 that rectifiable uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular paths are, up to reparametrization, bilipschitz; they become bilipschitz when parametrized by arc length:

**Corollary 5.11** (bounded detours)  $L(c) \leq L(\Theta) \cdot d(c(a), c(b))$ .

We have the following implications of the theorem for infinite paths:

**Corollary 5.12** (i) Every locally rectifiable and uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path

$$c: I \rightarrow X$$

is contained in a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set as a longitudinal path.

(ii) Every locally rectifiable and uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path  $c: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  with infinite length is contained as a longitudinal path in a Weyl cone

$$V(c(0), \text{st}(c(+\infty)))$$

for a unique simplex  $c(+\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\infty} X)$ .

(iii) Every locally rectifiable and uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path  $c: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow X$ , both of whose ends have infinite length, is contained as a longitudinal path in a parallel set  $P(c(-\infty), c(+\infty))$  for a unique pair of opposite simplices  $c(\pm\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}^{\pm}(\partial_{\infty} X)$ .

**Proof** (i) By Theorem 5.6, for every compact subinterval  $[a, b] \subset I$ , the corresponding part of the path is contained in the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ . These diamonds are nested, ie for  $[a', b'] \subset [a, b] \subset I$  it holds that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a'), c(b')) \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ . Since the path  $c$  is uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular, the closure of the union of these diamonds over all compact subintervals of  $I$  is either a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  diamond, a Weyl cone or a parallel set. The longitudinality follows from the longitudinality part of the theorem.

(ii) The sequence  $(c(n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}_0}$  is  $\Theta$ -regular and diverges to infinity in view of Corollary 5.11. By the theorem,  $c([0, n]) \subset \diamond_{\Theta}(c(0), c(n))$  for all  $n$ . In this situation, Lemma 3.79 applies, after enclosing the diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(0), c(n))$  in auxiliary Weyl cones  $V(c(0), \text{st}(\tau_n))$ , and yields that the sequence  $(c(n))$  is contained in a Weyl cone  $V(c(0), \text{st}(c(+\infty)))$  for a simplex  $c(+\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\infty} X)$ , which is unique according to Lemma 3.76. Since  $V(c(0), \text{st}(c(+\infty)))$  then also contains the diamonds  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(0), c(n))$ , it contains the entire path  $c$ .

(iii) By part (ii), there exist unique simplices  $c(\pm\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}^{\pm}(\partial_{\infty} X)$  such that  $c(\pm[t, +\infty)) \subset V(c(\pm t), \text{st}(c(\pm\infty)))$ . It follows that for any  $t_1 < t_2$  and any ideal points  $\xi_{\pm} \in \text{ost}(c(\pm\infty))$ , the bi-infinite broken path  $\xi_- c(t_1) c(t_2) \xi_+$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -straight. Proposition 3.23 then implies that the simplices  $c(\pm\infty)$  are opposite and the path  $c$  is contained in the parallel set  $P(c(-\infty), c(+\infty))$  as a longitudinal path.  $\square$

**Definition 5.13** (endpoint at infinity) For a locally rectifiable and uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path  $c: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  with infinite length, we call the simplex  $c(+\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\infty} X)$  its  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -*endpoint at infinity* or *ideal  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -endpoint*.

We apply our results to paths of infinite length which remain close to a Weyl cone or a parallel set. In some situations one can show that they must be contained in it.

**Corollary 5.14** *Let  $c: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  be a  $\Theta$ -regular  $L$ -bilipschitz ray which is contained in the tubular  $D$ -neighborhood of a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  Weyl cone  $V$  with tip at  $c(0)$ . Then  $V = V(c(0), \text{st}(c(+\infty)))$  and  $c$  is contained in  $V$  as a longitudinal path.*

**Proof** Suppose that

$$c([0, +\infty)) \subset \bar{N}_D(V(c(0), \text{st}(\tau_+)))$$

for a simplex  $\tau_+ \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  and some  $D > 0$ . According to Corollary 5.12,  $c$  is contained in the Weyl cone  $V(c(0), \text{st}(c(+\infty)))$  as a longitudinal path. The sequence  $(c(n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is  $\Theta$ -regular. Corollary 3.78 therefore implies that  $\tau_+ = c(+\infty)$ .  $\square$

If a bi-infinite  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular bilipschitz path is close to a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set, we need a longitudinality property for its projection to be able to conclude that it must be contained in the parallel set. We denote by  $\bar{c} = \pi_P \circ c$  the projection of the path  $c$  to the parallel set  $P$ .

**Corollary 5.15** *There exists a constant  $l = l(L, \Theta, D) > 0$  such that the following holds:*

*Suppose that  $c: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow X$  is a  $\Theta$ -regular  $L$ -bilipschitz line which is contained in the tubular  $D$ -neighborhood of a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set  $P$ . If for some interval  $[a', b'] \subset \mathbb{R}$  of length  $\geq l$  the segment  $\bar{c}(a')\bar{c}(b') \subset P$  is longitudinal, then  $P = P(c(-\infty), c(+\infty))$  and  $c$  is contained in  $P$  as a longitudinal path.*

**Proof** Suppose that  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  with opposite simplices  $\tau_\pm \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$ , and  $c(\mathbb{R}) \subset \bar{N}_D(P)$  for some  $D > 0$ . The projection  $\bar{c} = \pi_P \circ c$  is coarsely longitudinal by Lemma 3.14. More precisely, we choose  $\Theta'$  depending on  $\Theta$  and put  $l = LcD$  with the constant  $c = c(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$  from Lemma 3.5. Then Lemma 3.14 yields that for all subintervals  $[a', b'] \subset \mathbb{R}$  of length  $\geq l$  the segment  $\bar{c}(a')\bar{c}(b') \subset P$  is longitudinal. It follows for the bilipschitz rays  $r_+ = c|_{[0, +\infty)}$  and  $r_- = c|_{(-\infty, 0]}$  that  $\pi_P \circ r_\pm$  is contained in a tubular neighborhood of the Weyl cone  $V(\bar{c}(0), \text{st}(\tau_\pm)) \subset P$ , and hence  $r_\pm$  in a tubular neighborhood of  $V(\bar{c}(0), \text{st}(\tau_\pm))$ . By Corollary 5.14,  $\tau_\pm = c(\pm\infty)$ . According to Corollary 5.12,  $c$  is a longitudinal path in  $P(c(-\infty), c(+\infty)) = P$ .  $\square$

**Remark 9** For *discrete* buildings, the answer to Question 5.1 is affirmative without restriction on the paths. Using that discrete euclidean buildings are locally conical, it is not hard to show that every  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow X$  in a discrete euclidean building  $X$  is contained in  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(c(a), c(b))$ .

### 5.2 The Morse lemma for quasigeodesics in CAT(0) model spaces

We recall that the Morse lemma for quasigeodesics in Gromov hyperbolic spaces asserts that uniform quasigeodesics are uniformly close to geodesics. The main result of this paper is the following generalization to model spaces of arbitrary rank, where geodesic lines (rays, segments) are replaced by parallel sets (cones, diamonds):

**Theorem 5.16** (Morse lemma) *Let  $X$  be a model space. Suppose that  $q: [a_-, a_+] \rightarrow X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic and that  $x_-x_+$  is a  $\Theta$ -regular segment oriented  $B$ -Hausdorff-close to  $q(a_-)q(a_+)$ . Then the image of  $q$  is contained in the  $D$ -neighborhood of the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$ , with a constant  $D = D(L, A, \Theta, B, X) > 0$ .*

**Proof** We will deduce the theorem from the corresponding result for bilipschitz paths in euclidean buildings (see Theorem 5.6) by passing to ultralimits. We may work without loss of generality with *continuous* quasigeodesics.

We argue by contradiction. Suppose that a uniform constant  $D$  does not exist and consider, for a fixed model space  $X$  and fixed data  $(L, A, \Theta, B)$ , sequences of  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesics

$$q_n: I_n = [a_n^-, a_n^+] \rightarrow X,$$

$\Theta$ -regular segments  $x_n^-x_n^+$  oriented  $B$ -Hausdorff-close to the segments  $q_n(a_n^-)q_n(a_n^+)$  and positive numbers  $D_n \rightarrow +\infty$  such that the image of  $q_n$  is contained in the  $D_n$ -neighborhood of

$$\diamond_n := \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_n^-, x_n^+),$$

but not in its  $\frac{2013}{2014} D_n$ -neighborhood. We may assume that  $a_n^- \leq 0 \leq a_n^+$  and that  $q_n(0)$  has almost maximal distance  $> \frac{2013}{2014} D_n$  from  $\diamond_n$ . Note that  $\liminf_n D_n^{-1} |a_n^\pm| > 0$ .

Let  $P_n = P(\tau_n^-, \tau_n^+) \subset X$  be a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set through the points  $x_n^\pm$  such that the segment  $x_n^-x_n^+$  is longitudinal. Then

$$\diamond_n = V(x_n^-, \text{st}(\tau_n^+)) \cap V(x_n^+, \text{st}(\tau_n^-)) \subset P_n$$

and the image of  $q_n$  is contained in the  $D_n$ -neighborhood of  $P_n$ .

The next result provides important information on the position of the quasigeodesics  $q_n$  relative to the parallel sets  $P_n$  if the length of  $q_n$  grows faster than the scale  $D_n$ .

Let  $\bar{q}_n = \pi_{P_n} \circ q_n$  denote the nearest-point projection of  $q_n$  to  $P_n$ . We fix some  $\Theta'$ . (As usual,  $\Theta'$  is supposed to contain  $\Theta$  in its interior.)

**Lemma 5.17** (coarsely longitudinal on scale  $D_n$ ) *For every subinterval  $[b_n^-, b_n^+] \subset I_n$  of length  $\geq L(A + c(B + D_n))$ , the segment  $\bar{q}_n(b_n^-)\bar{q}_n(b_n^+) \subset P_n$  is  $\Theta'$ -longitudinal, where  $c = c(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$  is the constant from Lemma 3.5.*

**Proof** This is a direct consequence of Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14, because the segment  $\bar{q}_n(a_n^-)\bar{q}_n(a_n^+)$  is longitudinal by the choice of  $P_n$ . □

Now we pass to the ultralimit.

We choose basepoints  $\star_n \in \diamond_n$  with  $d(q_n(0), \star_n) \leq D_n$ , rescale (copies of) the space  $X$  with the scale factors  $D_n^{-1} \rightarrow 0$  and then take the ultralimit (with respect to some nonprincipal ultrafilter  $\omega$ ). As proven in [13, Chapter 5], the ultralimit of rescaled model spaces

$$(X_\omega, \star_\omega) = \omega\text{-}\lim_n (D_n^{-1}X, \star_n)$$

is a euclidean building of the same type  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ ; see Section 3.9. The ultralimit of parallel sets

$$P_\omega := \omega\text{-}\lim_n D_n^{-1}P_n \subset X_\omega$$

is again a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set,

$$P_\omega = P(\tau_\omega^-, \tau_\omega^+),$$

for a pair of opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm$  simplices  $\tau_\omega^\pm \subset \partial_\infty X_\omega$ ; see Lemma 3.81. The ultralimit of diamonds

$$\diamond_\omega := \omega\text{-}\lim_n D_n^{-1}\diamond_n \subset P_\omega$$

is a closed convex subset which contains the basepoint  $\star_\omega$ . It is in general not a diamond, but it inherits the following geometric property from the diamonds  $\diamond_n$ :

**Lemma 5.18** *If the segment  $y_\omega^-y_\omega^+ \subset \diamond_\omega$  is longitudinal, then  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(y_\omega^-, y_\omega^+) \subset \diamond_\omega$ .*

**Proof** The segment  $y_\omega^-y_\omega^+$  is the ultralimit of segments  $y_n^-y_n^+ \subset \diamond_n$ , and these segments are longitudinal for  $\omega$ -all  $n$ . Hence,  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(y_n^-, y_n^+) \subset \diamond_n$  due to Lemma 3.37. With Lemma 3.83 it follows that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(y_\omega^-, y_\omega^+) = \omega\text{-}\lim_n D_n^{-1}\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(y_n^-, y_n^+) \subset \diamond_\omega$ . □

The rescaled paths  $D_n^{-1}q_n: D_n^{-1}I_n \rightarrow D_n^{-1}X$  given by

$$(D_n^{-1}q_n)(t_n) = q_n(D_n t_n)$$

are  $(\Theta, D_n^{-1}B)$ -regular  $(L, D_n^{-1}A)$ -quasigeodesics. Their ultralimit

$$q_\omega = \omega\text{-}\lim_n D_n^{-1}q_n: I_\omega \rightarrow X_\omega$$

given by

$$q_\omega(t_\omega) = (q_n(D_n t_n))$$

is a well-defined  $L$ -bilipschitz path because  $D_n^{-1}A \rightarrow 0$  (see Lemma 2.16) and  $\Theta$ -regular because  $D_n^{-1}B \rightarrow 0$ . Its domain is the interval  $I_\omega = [a_\omega^-, a_\omega^+] \cap \mathbb{R}$ , where  $a_\omega^\pm = \omega\text{-}\lim D_n^{-1}a_n^\pm$  and  $\pm a_\omega^\pm \in (0, +\infty]$ . If  $|a_\omega^\pm| < +\infty$ , then the endpoint

$$q_\omega(a_\omega^\pm) = \omega\text{-}\lim q_n(a_n^\pm) = \omega\text{-}\lim x_n^\pm =: x_\omega^\pm$$

exists and lies in  $\diamond_\omega$ . Otherwise, the corresponding end of  $q_\omega$  has infinite length and diverges to infinity.

By construction,

$$q_\omega(I_\omega) \subset \bar{N}_1(\diamond_\omega),$$

but

$$q_\omega(I_\omega) \not\subset \diamond_\omega.$$

In particular,  $q_\omega(I_\omega) \subset \bar{N}_1(P_\omega)$ , and we denote by  $\bar{q}_\omega = \pi_{P_\omega} \circ q_\omega$  the nearest-point projection. Then  $d(\bar{q}_\omega, q_\omega) \leq 1$ .

Regarding the position of  $q_\omega$  relative to the parallel set, it inherits from the  $q_n$  uniform longitudinality beyond a certain scale:

**Lemma 5.19** (coarsely longitudinal ultralimit) *For every subinterval  $[b_-, b_+] \subset I_\omega$  of length  $\geq \frac{2014}{2013}cL$ , the segment  $\bar{q}_\omega(b_-)\bar{q}_\omega(b_+) \subset P_\omega$  is  $\Theta'$ -longitudinal.*

**Proof** Apply Lemma 5.17, taking into account that  $D_n^{-1}A, D_n^{-1}B \rightarrow 0$ . □

If  $q_\omega$  has infinite length, then the coarse longitudinality restricts the asymptotics of its end(s); they must flag converge to the simplices  $\tau_\omega^\pm$ . We get the following information on  $\diamond_\omega$ :

**Lemma 5.20** *If  $|a_\omega^\pm| = +\infty$ , then  $V(\star_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^\pm)) \subset \diamond_\omega$ .*



**Proof** Suppose that  $a_\omega^+ = +\infty$ . We have that  $d(\pi_{\diamond_\omega} \circ q_\omega, \bar{q}_\omega) \leq 2$ . Lemma 5.19 therefore implies that the segment connecting  $\star_\omega$  to the point  $\pi_{\diamond_\omega}(q_\omega(t)) \in \diamond_\omega$  is longitudinal for all sufficiently large  $t > 0$ , ie  $\pi_{\diamond_\omega}(q_\omega(t)) \in V(\star_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^+))$ . In particular, for any sequence  $t_k \rightarrow +\infty$  it holds that  $\pi_{\diamond_\omega}(q_\omega(t_k)) \rightarrow \tau_\omega^+$  (equivalently,  $q_\omega(t_k) \rightarrow \tau_\omega^+$ ) as  $k \rightarrow +\infty$ , even conically; see Lemma 3.76. The longitudinality of the segments implies furthermore that

$$\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\star_\omega, \pi_{\diamond_\omega}(q_\omega(t))) \subset \diamond_\omega;$$

see Lemma 5.18. The assertion follows now with the description of flag convergence in euclidean buildings given in Lemma 3.71. The case  $a_\omega^- = -\infty$  is analogous.  $\square$

This allows us to classify the possibilities for  $\diamond_\omega$ :

**Corollary 5.21**  $\diamond_\omega$  either equals the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_\omega^-, x_\omega^+)$  or one of the two Weyl cones  $V(x_\omega^\mp, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^\pm))$  or the full parallel set  $P_\omega$ , depending on whether both, one or none of the points  $x_\omega^\mp$  are defined.

**Proof** If the endpoint  $x_\omega^\pm$  of  $q_\omega$  exists, then clearly  $\diamond_\omega \subset V(x_\omega^\pm, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^\mp))$ , because  $\diamond_n \subset V(x_n^\pm, \text{st}(\tau_n^\mp))$ . If it does not exist, then  $V(\star_\omega, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^\pm)) \subset \diamond_\omega$  by the previous lemma.

Thus, if none of the endpoints exists, then  $\diamond_\omega = P_\omega$  by convexity. And, if exactly one endpoint  $x_\omega^\pm$  exists, then  $\diamond_\omega = V(x_\omega^\pm, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^\mp))$ , also by convexity. If both endpoints exist, then  $\diamond_\omega \subset \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_\omega^-, x_\omega^+)$ , and equality follows from Lemma 3.83; see also Lemma 5.18.  $\square$

Now we apply our results on rectifiable regular paths from Section 5.1 to  $q_\omega$  in order to control its position also on the small scale:

**Lemma 5.22**  $q_\omega(I_\omega) \subset \diamond_\omega$ .

**Proof** If both endpoints  $x_\omega^\pm$  of  $q_\omega$  exist, then  $\diamond_\omega = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_\omega^-, x_\omega^+)$  and Theorem 5.6 implies the assertion.

In the other cases, we use that  $q_\omega(I_\omega) \subset \bar{N}_1(\diamond_\omega)$ .

If  $q_\omega$  has exactly one endpoint, say  $x_\omega^-$ , and thus is a bilipschitz ray, then  $\diamond_\omega = V(x_\omega^-, \text{st}(\tau_\omega^+))$  and Corollary 5.14 implies the assertion.

If  $q_\omega$  has no endpoints at all and thus is a bilipschitz line, then  $\diamond_\omega = P_\omega$ . We use that the projection  $\bar{q}_\omega$  to  $P_\omega$  is coarsely longitudinal; see Lemma 5.19. We therefore can apply Corollary 5.15, which yields the assertion in this case.  $\square$

The last lemma contradicts that  $q_\omega(I_\omega) \not\subset \diamond_\omega$ . This concludes the proof of Theorem 5.16.  $\square$

**Remark 10** (i) It follows moreover that the projection  $\bar{q} = \pi_\diamond \circ q$  of  $q$  to the diamond  $\diamond = \diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(x_-, x_+)$  is *coarsely longitudinal*, by which we mean that for every subinterval  $[b_-, b_+] \subset [a_-, a_+]$  of length  $\geq L(A + c(B + D))$  the segment  $\bar{q}(b_-)\bar{q}(b_+) \subset \diamond$  is  $\Theta'$ -regular and longitudinal, with a constant  $c = c(\Theta, \Theta') > 0$ . This is a consequence of Lemma 3.14 and was used in the proof of the theorem; compare Lemma 5.17.

(ii) In the building case, the argument works equally well if we replace  $X$  by a sequence of euclidean buildings  $X_n$  of fixed type  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$ . Hence, the bound for the size of the tubular neighborhood depends only on the rank of the euclidean building and not on further geometric properties of it,  $D = D(L, A, \tau_{\text{mod}}, \Theta, B, \text{rank}(X))$ .

(iii) The theorem remains valid if one allows the model spaces to have flat factors, because the case with flat factors immediately reduces to the case without.

We have the following implications of the theorem for infinite quasigeodesics:

**Corollary 5.23** (i) Suppose that  $q: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiray. Then the image of  $q$  is contained in the  $(D+B)$ -neighborhood of the Weyl cone  $V(q(0), \text{st}(q(+\infty)))$  for a unique simplex  $q(+\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$ .

(ii) Suppose that  $q: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiline. Then the image of  $q$  is contained in the  $(D+B)$ -neighborhood of the parallel set

$$P(q(-\infty), q(+\infty))$$

for a unique pair of opposite simplices  $q(\pm\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}^\pm(\partial_\infty X)$ .

In both cases,  $q$  is coarsely longitudinal in the sense of Remark 10.

**Proof** (i) Let  $p_n x_n$  be  $\Theta$ -regular segments oriented  $B$ -Hausdorff-close to the segments  $q(0)q(n)$ . According to the theorem,  $q([0, n]) \subset \bar{N}_D(\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(p_n, x_n))$ . We extend the diamonds to cones, ie we let  $\tau_n \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  be simplices such that  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(p_n, x_n) \subset V(p_n, \text{st}(\tau_n))$ . Then  $q([0, n]) \subset \bar{N}_D(V(p_n, \text{st}(\tau_n)))$ , and hence

$q([0, n]) \subset \bar{N}_{D+B}(V(q(0), \text{st}(\tau_n)))$ . The sequence  $q(n) \rightarrow \infty$  is asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular, because the quasiray  $q$  is  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular. Applying the convergence criterion in Lemma 3.79, it follows that the sequence  $(\tau_n)$  converges,  $\tau_n \rightarrow \tau_\infty \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$ , and the image of  $q$  is contained in the  $(D+B)$ -neighborhood of  $V(q(0), \text{st}(\tau_\infty))$ . We put  $q(+\infty) = \tau_\infty$ . The uniqueness follows from Corollary 3.78.

(ii) According to part (i), there exist unique simplices  $\tau_{\pm\infty} = q(\pm\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  such that  $q(\pm n) \rightarrow \tau_{\pm\infty}$  conically as  $n \rightarrow +\infty$ . More precisely,

$$(5-1) \quad q(\pm[-n, +\infty)) \subset \bar{N}_{D+B}(V(q(\mp n), \text{st}(\tau_{\pm\infty}))).$$

The segment  $q(-n)q(n)$  is  $\Theta'$ -regular and arbitrarily long for large  $n$ . Let  $y_{-n}y_n$  be a subsegment of it at distance  $> (D+B) \cdot (\sin \epsilon_0(\Theta'))^{-1}$  from the endpoints  $q(\pm n)$ . By Corollary 3.46,

$$y_{-n}y_n \subset V(q(-n), \text{st}(\tau_{+\infty})) \cap V(q(n), \text{st}(\tau_{-\infty})).$$

Then for any interior point  $z_n$  of this segment, it holds that  $\log_{z_n} \tau_{\pm\infty} = \tau_\pm(z_n q(\pm n))$ , and it follows that the simplices  $\tau_{\pm\infty}$  are  $z_n$ -opposite. Furthermore, the  $\Theta'$ -cones  $V(q(t), \text{st}(\Theta'))$  enter the parallel set  $P = P(\tau_{-\infty}, \tau_{+\infty})$  within uniformly bounded time (see Proposition 3.44) and in view of (5-1) it follows that  $\bar{N}_{D+B}(P)$  contains the image of  $q$ .

The coarse longitudinality is a consequence of Lemma 3.14. □

**Remark 11** As a consequence of the corollary, the image of every uniformly coarsely  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular uniform quasiline is contained in a uniform neighborhood of a union of two opposite Weyl cones in a parallel set. The cones have a common tip which can be chosen uniformly close to any point on the quasiline.

**Definition 5.24** (endpoint at infinity) For a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular quasiray  $q: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  we call the simplex  $q(+\infty) \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  its  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -*endpoint at infinity* or *ideal  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -endpoint*.

We apply our results to infinite quasigeodesics which remain close to a Weyl cone or a parallel set and show that they must be uniformly close.

**Corollary 5.25** Let  $q: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow X$  be a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiray which is contained in a tubular neighborhood of a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  Weyl cone  $V$  with tip at  $q(0)$ . Then  $V = V(q(0), \text{st}(q(+\infty)))$  and  $q$  is contained in the tubular  $(D+B)$ -neighborhood of  $V$  as a coarsely longitudinal path.

**Proof** Suppose that

$$q([0, +\infty)) \subset N_r(V(q(0), \text{st}(\tau_+)))$$

for a simplex  $\tau_+ \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$  and some  $r > 0$ . According to Corollary 5.23,  $q$  is contained in the  $(D + B)$ -neighborhood of the Weyl cone  $V(q(0), \text{st}(q(+\infty)))$  as a coarsely longitudinal path. The sequence  $(q(n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$  is asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular. Corollary 3.78 therefore implies that  $\tau_+ = q(+\infty)$ .  $\square$

If a coarsely  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiline is close to a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set, we need a coarse longitudinality property to be able to conclude that it must be uniformly close to the parallel set. We denote by  $\bar{q} = \pi_P \circ q$  the projection of  $q$  to the parallel set  $P$ .

**Corollary 5.26** *There exists a constant  $l = l(L, A, \Theta, B, r) > 0$  such that the following holds:*

*Suppose that  $q: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiline which is contained in a tubular neighborhood of a type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  parallel set  $P$ . If for some interval  $[a, b] \subset \mathbb{R}$  of length  $\geq l$  the segment  $\bar{q}(a)\bar{q}(b) \subset P$  is longitudinal, then  $P = P(q(-\infty), q(+\infty))$  and  $q$  is contained in  $\bar{N}_{D+B}(P)$  as a coarsely longitudinal path.*

**Proof** Suppose that  $P = P(\tau_-, \tau_+)$  with opposite simplices  $\tau_\pm \in \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$ , and  $q(\mathbb{R}) \subset \bar{N}_r(P)$  for some  $r > 0$ . The projection  $\bar{q} = \pi_P \circ q$  is coarsely longitudinal along  $P$  by Lemma 3.14. It follows with Corollary 5.25 that  $\tau_\pm = q(\pm\infty)$ . According to Corollary 5.23,  $q$  is contained as a coarsely longitudinal path in the  $(D+B)$ -neighborhood of  $P(q(-\infty), q(+\infty)) = P$ .  $\square$

### 5.3 Regular implies Morse for undistorted maps and actions

We relate the Morse lemma (Theorem 5.16) to terminology used in our paper [10].

There we defined (in the setting of symmetric spaces) a Morse quasigeodesic as a quasigeodesic satisfying the conclusion of the Morse lemma with  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -diamonds replaced by  $\Theta$ -diamonds, ie every finite subpath of the quasigeodesic is uniformly close to a diamond whose tips are uniformly close to the endpoints of the subpath. More precisely:

**Definition 5.27** (Morse quasigeodesic; see [10, Definition 7.14]) An  $(L, A, \Theta, D)$ -Morse quasigeodesic in  $X$  is an  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic  $q: I \rightarrow X$  such that for all

subintervals  $[t_1, t_2] \subset I$  the subpath  $q|_{[t_1, t_2]}$  is contained in the tubular  $D$ -neighborhood of a  $\Theta$ -diamond  $\diamond_{\Theta}(x_1, x_2)$  with  $d(x_i, q(t_i)) \leq D$ .

We call a quasigeodesic  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse if it is  $(L, A, \Theta, D)$ -Morse for some data  $(L, A, \Theta, D)$ .

In particular,  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse quasigeodesics are uniformly coarsely  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular.

Our Morse lemma yields the converse:

**Corollary 5.28** (regular implies Morse for quasigeodesics) *Uniformly coarsely  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasigeodesics in model spaces are uniform  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse quasigeodesics.*

**Proof** Let  $q: I \rightarrow X$  be a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic. From the conclusion of Theorem 5.16 and the  $(\Theta, B)$ -regularity of  $q$ , it follows for any  $\Theta'$  (whose interior contains  $\Theta$ ) that  $q$  is uniformly close also to the  $\Theta'$ -diamond  $\diamond_{\Theta'}(x_-, x_+)$ , and analogously for the subsegments  $q|_{[b_-, b_+]}$  for all subintervals  $[b_-, b_+] \subset [a_-, a_+]$ . This means that  $q$  is an  $(L, A, \Theta', D')$ -Morse quasigeodesic for some uniform constant  $D' = D'(L, A, \Theta, \Theta', B, X)$ . □

Based on the notion of Morse quasigeodesic, we defined in [10] Morse embeddings and Morse actions. The definitions apply verbatim to all model spaces.

We first consider maps into model spaces. Suppose that  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\Theta$  are  $\iota$ -invariant.

**Definition 5.29** (Morse embedding; see [10, Definition 7.23]) *A  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse embedding from a quasigeodesic space  $Z$  into  $X$  is a map  $f: Z \rightarrow X$  which sends uniform quasigeodesics in  $Z$  to uniform Morse quasigeodesics in  $X$ . We call it a  $\Theta$ -Morse embedding if it sends uniform quasigeodesics to uniform  $\Theta$ -Morse quasigeodesics.*

Thus, the map is a  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse embedding if for any parameters  $l$  and  $a$  the  $(l, a)$ -quasigeodesics in  $Z$  are mapped to  $(L, A, \Theta, D)$ -Morse quasigeodesics in  $X$  with the parameters  $L, A, \Theta$  and  $D$  depending on  $l$  and  $a$ . It is a  $\Theta$ -Morse embedding, if  $\Theta$  is fixed and only  $L, A$  and  $D$  depend on  $l$  and  $a$ .

In particular,  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse embeddings are coarsely uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasi-isometric embeddings. (Note that they are embeddings only in a coarse sense.) We obtain the converse:

**Corollary 5.30** (regular implies Morse for quasiisometric embeddings) *Coarsely uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiisometric embeddings from quasigeodesic metric spaces into model spaces are uniform  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse embeddings.*

**Proof** Let  $f: Z \rightarrow X$  be a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiisometric embedding from a quasigeodesic space  $Z$ . Then  $q$  maps uniform quasigeodesics in  $Z$  to  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular uniform quasigeodesics in  $X$ . These are uniform  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse quasigeodesics.  $\square$

Now we consider isometric group actions on model spaces. We recall that, since  $X$  has no flat factor, every such action becomes type-preserving after restricting it to a suitable finite-index subgroup.

We call an action Morse if its orbit maps are Morse. More precisely:

**Definition 5.31** (Morse action; see [10, Definition 7.30]) We say that an isometric action  $\Gamma \curvearrowright X$  of a finitely generated group  $\Gamma$  is  $\Theta$ -Morse if one (any) orbit map  $\Gamma \rightarrow \Gamma x \subset X$  is a  $\Theta$ -Morse embedding with respect to a (any) word metric on  $\Gamma$ . We call the action  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse if it is  $\Theta$ -Morse for some  $\Theta$ .

Morse actions are *undistorted* in the sense that the orbit maps are quasiisometric embeddings. In particular, they are properly discontinuous. Furthermore,  $\Theta$ -Morse actions are (coarsely)  $\Theta$ -regular. Again, we obtain a converse:

**Corollary 5.32** (URU implies Morse) *Uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular undistorted isometric actions by finitely generated groups on model spaces are uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Morse.*

**Proof** The orbit maps are coarsely uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiisometric embeddings.  $\square$

## 5.4 Examples of regular bilipschitz paths

We construct examples of regular bilipschitz paths in model spaces which are not close to geodesics. One finds such paths already in the euclidean model Weyl chamber  $\Delta = \Delta_{\text{euc}} = V(0, \sigma_{\text{mod}})$  and, accordingly, inside every euclidean Weyl chamber of a model space.

Let  $\tau_{\text{mod}} = \sigma_{\text{mod}}$ , and let  $\Theta \subset \text{int}(\sigma_{\text{mod}})$  be  $\iota$ -invariant. Pick a sequence of numbers  $s_n \geq 1$  and a nonconverging sequence of unit vectors  $v_n \in \Theta$ . (Here, we identify  $\sigma_{\text{mod}}$

with the “unit sphere”  $V(0, \sigma_{\text{mod}}) \cap \partial B(0, 1)$ .) For instance, we can take  $(v_n)$  to be an alternating sequence taking exactly two values  $v_1 = v_{2k-1}$  and  $v_2 = v_{2k}$  for  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ , where  $v_1, v_2 \in \Theta$ . Now, define the 1-Lipschitz path  $p: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow V(0, \sigma_{\text{mod}})$  by concatenating the segments  $x_n x_{n+1}$ , where each vector  $\overrightarrow{x_n x_{n+1}}$  equals  $s_n v_n$ . We claim that the path  $p$  is a  $\Theta$ -regular quasigeodesic ray in  $V(0, \sigma_{\text{mod}})$ . First of all, it follows from the definition of  $p$  that it is  $\Theta$ -straight. Therefore, by Proposition 3.23 the sequence  $(x_n)$  is  $\Theta$ -longitudinal: all segments  $x_m x_n$  for  $n > m$  are  $\Theta$ -longitudinal. For the same reason (inserting additional subdivision points), all segments  $p(s)p(t)$  for  $s < t$  are  $\Theta$ -longitudinal as well, ie the path  $p$  is  $\Theta$ -longitudinal. In particular,  $p$  is  $\Theta$ -regular. That  $p$  is quasigeodesic follows from the fact that the distance  $d(\cdot, 0)$  from the origin grows along  $p$  with uniformly positive slope  $\geq \epsilon(\Theta) > 0$ .

Our next goal is to ensure that  $p$  is not close to a geodesic ray. In order to accomplish this, we choose the sequence  $(s_n)$  so that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow +\infty} (s_{n+1} - s_n) = +\infty.$$

Suppose that there exists a geodesic ray  $r: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow V(0, \sigma_{\text{mod}})$ ,  $r(t) = tu$  with a unit vector  $u \in V(0, \sigma_{\text{mod}})$ , and a constant  $C'$  such that

$$p([0, +\infty)) \subset N_{C'}(r([0, +\infty))).$$

Since the sequence of lengths vectors  $\overrightarrow{x_n x_{n+1}}$  diverges to infinity and the vectors are contained in the  $C'$ -neighborhood of  $r([0, +\infty))$ , it follows that the directions of these vectors converge to the direction vector  $u$  of the ray  $r$ . This contradicts the assumption that the sequence of vectors  $(v_n)$  does not converge.

## 6 Quasiisometric embeddings of spaces and undistorted actions

In this section we prove our main applications of the Morse lemma: Theorems 1.4 and 1.5 from the introduction, stating the hyperbolicity of quasiisometrically embedded uniformly regular subsets of model spaces and the existence of a continuous extension to the Gromov boundary.

Throughout the section, we assume that the face type  $\tau_{\text{mod}} \subset \sigma_{\text{mod}}$  and the subsets  $\Theta \subset \text{ost}(\tau_{\text{mod}})$  are  $\iota$ -invariant. Then  $\tau_{\text{mod}}^\pm = \tau_{\text{mod}}$  and  $\Theta_\pm = \Theta$ , ie directions antipodal to  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular ( $\Theta$ -regular) directions are also  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular ( $\Theta$ -regular), and segments satisfying one of these regularity properties keep it when reversing orientation.

## 6.1 Regular subsets of euclidean buildings

Let  $X$  be a euclidean building. We now apply our results on regular paths in Section 5.1 to regular subsets.

**Definition 6.1** (rectifiably regularly path connected) A subset  $R \subset X$  is called *rectifiably  $\Theta$ -regularly path connected* if any two distinct points in  $R$  can be connected by a rectifiable  $\Theta$ -regular path contained in  $R$ .

Note that such subsets are in particular  $\Theta$ -regular. We will now study their geometric and topological properties.

Fix a point  $r \in R$ . Then the function

$$r' \mapsto \tau(rr')$$

is well defined on  $R - \{r\}$  and continuous. (Compare the discussion of  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -directions in the beginning of Section 5.1.)

**Lemma 6.2** *The function  $\tau(r \cdot)$  is locally constant on  $R - \{r\}$ .*

**Proof** The target of the function, the set of type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplices in  $\Sigma_{r_0} X$ , is a discrete space.  $\square$

**Corollary 6.3** *If  $r_1, r_2 \in R - \{r\}$  with  $\tau(rr_1) \neq \tau(rr_2)$ , then  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  lie in different path components of  $R - \{r\}$ .*

The next observation relies on our main result on regular bilipschitz paths in Section 5.1.

**Lemma 6.4** *Let  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow R$  be a rectifiable embedded path. Then for every  $t \in (a, b)$ , the points  $c(a)$  and  $c(b)$  lie in different path components of  $R - \{c(t)\}$ .*

**Proof** Theorem 5.6 and Lemma 5.3 imply that the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -directions  $\tau_{\pm}(t)$  are opposite to each other. Since  $\tau(c(t)c(a)) = \tau_{-}(t)$  and  $\tau(c(t)c(b)) = \tau_{+}(t)$ , the previous corollary yields the assertion.  $\square$

**Corollary 6.5** (i) *All embedded paths  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow R$  are rectifiable.*

(ii) *Any two embedded paths in  $R$  with the same endpoints agree up to reparametrization.*

(iii) *The image of a nonembedded path  $c: [a, b] \rightarrow R$  contains the image of the (unique up to reparametrization) embedded path connecting its endpoints.*



**Proof** Let  $c_1, c_2: I = [a, b] \rightarrow R$  be paths with the same endpoints, and suppose that  $c_1$  is embedded and rectifiable. (By assumption, any two points in  $R$  are connected by a rectifiable embedded path in  $R$ .) By Lemma 6.4,  $c_2$  must go through every point on  $c_1$ , ie  $c_1(I) \subseteq c_2(I)$ .

If  $c_2$  is also embedded, the lemma implies moreover that the order of the points must be preserved, ie there exists a monotonic injective map  $\phi: I \rightarrow I$  such that  $c_2 \circ \phi = c_1$ . The image  $\phi(I) \subset I$  is compact, due to the continuity of  $c_2$ . If  $\phi(I) \neq I$  and  $(t, t')$  is a connected component of  $I - \phi(I)$ , then necessarily  $c_2(t) = c_2(t')$  and we arrive at a contradiction. Therefore,  $\phi$  must be bijective and hence a homeomorphism. This shows part (ii), and (i) follows directly.

The initial part of the proof now yields (iii). □

Let  $d_R$  denote the intrinsic path metric on  $R$ .

**Corollary 6.6**  $(R, d_R)$  is a metric tree.

**Proof** Corollary 6.5 implies that  $(R, d_R)$  is a geodesic metric space, the distance of two points given by the length of the unique embedded path connecting them. This path is also the *unique* geodesic segment in  $(R, d_R)$  connecting the two points.

It follows, furthermore, that the intersection of any two geodesic segments with the same initial point is again a geodesic segment (with this initial point), and that geodesic triangles in  $(R, d_R)$  are tripods, ie  $(R, d_R)$  is 0–hyperbolic. □

Note, furthermore, that the embedding

$$(R, d_R) \rightarrow (X, d)$$

is  $L(\Theta)$ –bilipschitz; see Corollary 5.11.

We summarize our discussion so far:

**Theorem 6.7** *Rectifiably  $\Theta$ –regularly path connected subsets of euclidean buildings are metric trees, when equipped with their intrinsic path metrics. The inclusion is a bilipschitz embedding with bilipschitz constant controlled by  $\Theta$ .*

We can say more about the extrinsic geometry of  $R$  in  $X$ , infinitesimally and asymptotically.

Every embedded path  $c: [0, \epsilon) \rightarrow R$  has a well-defined  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -initial direction  $\tau(c) \subset \Sigma_{c(0)}X$  satisfying

$$\tau(c(0)c(t)) = \tau(c)$$

for all  $0 < t < \epsilon$ ; see Lemma 5.2.

**Addendum 6.8** (antipodal infinitesimal branches) *For any two embedded paths  $c_1, c_2: [0, \epsilon) \rightarrow R$  with the same initial point  $c_1(0) = c_2(0)$ , the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -initial directions  $\tau(c_1)$  and  $\tau(c_2)$  are either equal or antipodal. In the former case, there exist numbers  $\epsilon_1, \epsilon_2 \in (0, \epsilon)$  such that the subpaths  $c_1|_{[0, \epsilon_1]}$  and  $c_2|_{[0, \epsilon_2]}$  agree up to reparametrization.*

**Proof** If the images  $c_i((0, \epsilon))$  are not disjoint, ie if there exist  $\epsilon_1, \epsilon_2 \in (0, \epsilon)$  such that  $c_1(\epsilon_1) = c_2(\epsilon_2)$ , then  $c_1|_{[0, \epsilon_1]}$  and  $c_2|_{[0, \epsilon_2]}$  agree up to reparametrization; see Corollary 6.5(ii). In this case, of course,  $\tau(c_1) = \tau(c_2)$ .

Otherwise, if  $c_1((0, \epsilon)) \cap c_2((0, \epsilon)) = \emptyset$ , then the concatenation  $c = c_1 \star \bar{c}_2: (-\epsilon, \epsilon) \rightarrow R$  of the path  $c_1$  and the reversed path  $\bar{c}_2(-t) := c_2(t)$  of  $c_2$  is a rectifiable embedded path in  $R$ . The statement then follows from Lemma 5.3. □

Every embedded path  $c: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow R$  with infinite length has a well-defined  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -endpoint at infinity  $c(+\infty) \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}X$  such that

$$c([0, +\infty)) \subset V(c(0), \text{st}(c(+\infty)));$$

see Corollary 5.12.

**Addendum 6.9** (antipodal endpoints at infinity) *For any two embedded paths*

$$c_1, c_2: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow R$$

*with infinite length, the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -endpoints at infinity  $c_i(+\infty) \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}X$  are either equal or antipodal. In the former case, there exist numbers  $t_1, t_2 > 0$  such that the subpaths  $c_1|_{[t_1, +\infty)}$  and  $c_2|_{[t_2, +\infty)}$  agree up to reparametrization.*

**Proof** Since  $R$  is intrinsically a metric tree (see Corollary 6.6) we may assume after, modifying the paths, that they have the same initial point  $c_1(0) = c_2(0)$  and are otherwise disjoint. Then the concatenation  $c = c_1 \star \bar{c}_2: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow R$  is an embedded path in  $R$ , both of whose ends have infinite length. It is in particular uniformly  $\Theta$ -regular and locally rectifiable; see Corollary 6.5. The assertion then follows from Corollary 5.12. □

### 6.2 Regular maps into euclidean buildings

Let  $X$  still be a euclidean building. Our discussion of regular subsets immediately implies a restriction on the geometry of spaces which can be mapped into buildings by regular maps:

**Corollary 6.10** (from tree) *If  $Z$  is a path metric space and  $Z \rightarrow X$  is a  $\Theta$ -regular bilipschitz map, then  $Z$  is a metric tree.*

**Proof** The image of the embedding is a rectifiably  $\Theta$ -regularly path connected subset of  $X$  and hence, according to Theorem 6.7, a metric tree. Thus,  $Z$  is bilipschitz homeomorphic to a metric tree. Lemma 2.15 implies that  $Z$  itself is a metric tree.  $\square$

Consider now a  $\Theta$ -regular bilipschitz map

$$b: T \rightarrow X$$

from a metric tree  $T$ . From our earlier discussion, we obtain information on the infinitesimal and asymptotic behavior.

By Addendum 6.8, we have in every point  $t \in T$  a well-defined induced *infinitesimal map*

$$\Sigma_t b: \Sigma_t T \rightarrow \Sigma_{b(t)}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X := \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\Sigma_{b(t)} X)$$

such that, if  $c: [0, \epsilon) \rightarrow T$  is a geodesic path starting in  $c(0) = t$  in the direction  $v \in \Sigma_t T$ , then the  $\Theta$ -regular image bilipschitz path  $b \circ c$  has the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -initial direction

$$\tau(b \circ c) = (\Sigma_t b)(v).$$

Furthermore, the infinitesimal maps  $\Sigma_t b$  are *antipodal*, ie they send distinct directions in  $\Sigma_t T$  to opposite type  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$  simplices in  $\Sigma_{b(t)} X$ .

**Definition 6.11** (antipodal map) A map from a set into the set of simplices of a spherical building is called *antipodal* if it sends distinct elements to antipodal simplices.

By Addendum 6.9, there is a well-defined *boundary map* at infinity

$$\partial_\infty b: \partial_\infty T \rightarrow \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X = \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$$

such that, if  $\rho: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow T$  is a unit-speed geodesic ray in  $T$ , then the  $\Theta$ -regular image bilipschitz ray  $b \circ \rho$  in  $X$  has the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -endpoint at infinity

$$(b \circ \rho)(+\infty) = (\partial_\infty b)(\rho(+\infty)).$$

Also  $\partial_\infty b$  is *antipodal*. Let

$$\bar{b}: \bar{T} \rightarrow \widetilde{b(T)} \subset \bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$$

denote the map from the visual compactification  $\bar{T} = T \cup \partial_\infty T$  to the subset  $\widetilde{b(T)} = b(T) \cup \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  of the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -bordification  $\bar{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} = X \cup \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ , which combines the map  $b$  with the boundary map  $\partial_\infty b$ . Since the image  $b(T) \subset X$  is a  $\Theta$ -regular subset, we have a well-defined topology of flag convergence on  $\widetilde{b(T)}$  extending the visual topology on  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  and the subspace topology on  $b(T)$ ; see our discussion in Section 3.8. It makes therefore sense to speak of the continuity of  $\bar{b}$ , and we can state:

**Theorem 6.12** (antipodal continuous extension at infinity) *The extension  $\bar{b}$  of  $b$  is continuous with respect to the topology of flag convergence (on  $\widetilde{b(T)}$ ). In particular, the boundary map  $\partial_\infty b$  is continuous with respect to the visual topology. Moreover, it is antipodal.*

**Proof** Trees are rank one euclidean buildings and we use the description of the visual topology on their visual compactification as given in Fact 3.59. We denote the point shadows and the corresponding basic subsets in  $\partial_\infty T$  and  $\bar{T} = T \cup \partial_\infty T$  by  $\text{pSh}_{\cdot, \cdot}^T$ , and  $\text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{\cdot, \cdot}^T = \text{pO}_{\cdot, \cdot}^T \cup \text{pSh}_{\cdot, \cdot}^T$ .

We must show that  $\bar{b}$  is continuous at  $\partial_\infty T$ . Consider points  $t, t' \in T$ . Applying (Theorem 5.6 and) Corollary 5.12(ii) to geodesic rays in  $T$ , which start in  $t$  and pass through  $t'$ , we obtain that

$$\bar{b}(\text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{t, t'}^T) \subset \text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{b(t), b(t')}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}.$$

Let  $\rho: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow T$  be a geodesic ray. Then  $b \circ \rho$  is a  $\Theta$ -regular bilipschitz ray in  $X$ , which is contained in the Weyl cone  $V(b(\rho(0)), \text{st}((\partial_\infty b)(\rho(+\infty))))$ . The subsets  $\text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{b(\rho(0)), b(\rho(u))}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \cap \widetilde{b(T)}$  for  $u \rightarrow +\infty$  therefore form a neighborhood basis of  $(\partial_\infty b)(\rho(+\infty))$  in  $\widetilde{b(T)}$ ; see Corollary 3.64. Since their  $\bar{b}$ -preimages contain the neighborhoods  $\text{p}\bar{\text{O}}_{\rho(0), \rho(u)}^T$  of  $\rho(+\infty)$ , it follows that  $\bar{b}$  is continuous at  $\rho(+\infty) \in \partial_\infty T$ .

The antipodality of  $\partial_\infty b$  follows from Corollary 5.12(i). □

### 6.3 Regular quasiisometric embeddings into model spaces

Let  $X$  be a model space. From our results on regular maps to euclidean buildings we deduce now by an ultralimit argument corresponding results for coarsely regular maps

to model spaces and isometric actions. We first show that the large scale geometry of spaces, which admit coarsely regular maps into model spaces, is restricted:

**Theorem 6.13** (from hyperbolic space) *If  $q: Z \rightarrow X$  is a (coarsely) uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiisometric embedding from a quasigeodesic metric space into a model space, then  $Z$  is Gromov hyperbolic.*

**Proof** Since  $Z$  is quasiisometric to its Rips complex  $\text{Rips}_R(Z)$  for sufficiently large  $R$ , we can assume without loss of generality that  $Z$  is a geodesic metric space. In order to verify its hyperbolicity, it suffices to show that every asymptotic cone of  $Z$  is a metric tree; see eg [4].

We work with the setup as described in Section 2.7. For a sequence of scale factors  $\lambda_n > 0$  converging to zero, a sequence of basepoints  $\star_n \in Z$  and the sequence of image points  $\star'_n := q(\star_n)$  in  $X$ , we consider the asymptotic cones

$$(Z_\omega, \star_\omega) = \omega\text{-lim}(\lambda_n Z, \star_n), \quad (X_\omega, \star'_\omega) = \omega\text{-lim}(\lambda_n X, \star'_n).$$

Note that they are geodesic spaces, since the original spaces are. By Lemma 2.16—compare also the proof of Theorem 5.16—the quasiisometric embedding  $q$  gives rise to a uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular bilipschitz embedding

$$q_\omega: Z_\omega \rightarrow X_\omega.$$

Therefore, according to Corollary 6.10,  $Z_\omega$  is a metric tree. □

Now we discuss the asymptotics of coarsely regular maps from hyperbolic spaces.

Let  $Z$  be a locally compact geodesic  $\delta$ -hyperbolic metric space, and consider its Gromov compactification

$$\bar{Z} = Z \cup \partial_\infty Z,$$

where  $\partial_\infty Z$  is the space of equivalence classes of geodesic rays in  $Z$ . Here, two rays are called equivalent if they are asymptotic in the sense that their images have finite Hausdorff distance.

The topology on  $\bar{Z}$  can be described at infinity as follows; see [4]. Fix a sufficiently large number  $r$ , say  $r \geq 3\delta$ , and define the following basic subsets of  $\bar{Z}$ : For points  $z, w \in Z$ , let the subset  $\text{b}\bar{O}_{z,w,r} \subset \bar{Z}$  consist of all points  $\bar{z} \in \bar{Z}$  such that every geodesic (segment or ray)  $z\bar{z}$  connecting  $z$  to  $\bar{z}$  has nonempty intersection with the open ball  $B(w, r)$ . Given an ideal boundary point  $\zeta \in \partial_\infty Z$  and a ray  $\rho: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow Z$

representing it,  $\rho(+\infty) = \zeta$ , then the countable collection of basic subsets  $\text{b}\overline{O}_{\rho(0),\rho(n),r}$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  forms a neighborhood basis of  $\xi$  in  $\overline{Z}$ . In particular, the topology on  $\overline{Z}$  is first-countable.

Consider now a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiisometric embedding

$$q: Z \rightarrow X.$$

If  $\rho: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow Z$  is a geodesic ray, then  $q \circ \rho$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiray in  $X$  and has a well-defined  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -endpoint at infinity  $(q \circ \rho)(+\infty) \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ ; see Corollary 5.23 and Definition 5.24. More precisely, the image of  $q \circ \rho$  is contained in a tubular neighborhood with uniformly controlled radius of the Weyl cone  $V((q \circ \rho)(0), \text{st}((q \circ \rho)(+\infty)))$ . In particular, the endpoint  $(q \circ \rho)(+\infty)$  depends only on the endpoint  $\rho(+\infty) \in \partial_{\infty} Z$ . Hence,  $q$  induces a well-defined *boundary map* at infinity

$$\partial_{\infty} q: \partial_{\infty} Z \rightarrow \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X = \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_{\infty} X)$$

such that, if  $\rho: [0, +\infty) \rightarrow Z$  is a ray in  $Z$ , then the  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular image quasiray  $q \circ \rho$  in  $X$  has the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -endpoint at infinity

$$(q \circ \rho)(+\infty) = (\partial_{\infty} q)(\rho(+\infty)).$$

Furthermore, also as a consequence of Corollary 5.23,  $\partial_{\infty} q$  is *antipodal*. Let

$$\overline{q}: \overline{Z} \rightarrow \widetilde{q(Z)} \subset \overline{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$$

denote the map from the visual compactification  $\overline{Z} = Z \cup \partial_{\infty} Z$  to the subset  $\widetilde{q(Z)} = q(Z) \cup \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  of the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -bordification  $\overline{X}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} = X \cup \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ , which combines the map  $q$  with the boundary map  $\partial_{\infty} q$ . Since the image  $q(Z) \subset X$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular subset, we have a well-defined topology of flag convergence on  $\widetilde{q(Z)}$ , and we can state:

**Theorem 6.14** (antipodal continuous extension at infinity) *The extension  $\overline{q}$  of  $q$  is continuous at  $\partial_{\infty} Z$  with respect to the topology of flag convergence on  $\widetilde{q(Z)}$ . The boundary map  $\partial_{\infty} q$  is antipodal and hence a topological embedding with respect to the visual topology on  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ .*

**Proof** Suppose that  $\overline{q}$  is not continuous at the ideal point  $\zeta \in \partial_{\infty} Z$ . Since the topology on  $\overline{Z}$  is first-countable, there exists a sequence  $\overline{z}_n \rightarrow \zeta$  in  $\overline{Z}$  such that the sequence  $(\overline{q}(\overline{z}_n))$  in  $\widetilde{q(Z)}$  avoids a neighborhood of  $\partial_{\infty} q(\zeta) \in \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$ .

Fix a basepoint  $z \in Z$  and let  $z\bar{z}_n$  be geodesic segments or rays in  $Z$  connecting  $z$  to  $\bar{z}_n$ . If  $\bar{z}_n \in \partial_\infty Z$ , then the  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasiray  $q(z\bar{z}_n)$  is uniformly close to the Weyl cone  $V(q(z), \text{st}(\partial_\infty q(\bar{z}_n)))$ ; compare the definition of the boundary map  $\partial_\infty q$  above. If  $\bar{z}_n \in Z$ , then  $q(z\bar{z}_n)$  is a  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular  $(L, A)$ -quasigeodesic. Since  $\bar{z}_n \rightarrow \infty$  as  $n \rightarrow +\infty$ , the  $(\Theta, B)$ -regular segment  $q(z)q(\bar{z}_n)$  is  $\Theta'$ -regular for all sufficiently large  $n$  (see Lemma 3.5) and  $q(z\bar{z}_n)$  is then uniformly close to the diamond  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(q(z), q(\bar{z}_n))$  by Theorem 5.16.

After passing to a subsequence, we may assume that the  $z\bar{z}_n$  converge to a ray  $z\zeta$ . Again, the quasiray  $q(z\zeta)$  is uniformly close to the Weyl cone  $V(q(z), \text{st}(\partial_\infty q(\zeta)))$ .

Since  $z\bar{z}_n \rightarrow z\zeta$ , there exists a sequence  $w_n \rightarrow \infty$  of points  $w_n \in z\bar{z}_n$  uniformly (arbitrarily) close to  $z\zeta$ . Then the asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular sequence  $(q(w_n))$  is contained in a tubular neighborhood of  $V(q(z), \text{st}(\partial_\infty q(\zeta)))$ , ie  $q(w_n) \rightarrow \partial_\infty q(\zeta)$  conically. For a sufficiently large  $R > 0$  independent of  $n$ , the balls  $B(q(w_n), R)$  intersect  $V(q(z), \text{st}(\partial_\infty q(\zeta)))$  and also  $V(q(z), \text{st}(\partial_\infty q(\bar{z}_n)))$  and  $\diamond_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(q(z), q(\bar{z}_n))$ . This means that  $\partial_\infty q(\zeta) \in \text{bSh}_{q(z), q(w_n), R}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$  and  $\bar{q}(\bar{z}_n) \in \text{b}\bar{O}_{q(z), q(w_n), R}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}}$ .

Let  $y_n \in B(q(w_n), R) \cap V(q(z), \text{st}(\partial_\infty q(\zeta)))$ . Then also the sequence  $(y_n)$  is asymptotically  $\Theta$ -regular and, according to Corollary 3.64, the subsets  $\text{b}\bar{O}_{q(z), y_n, 2R}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \cap \widetilde{q(Z)}$  form a neighborhood basis for the point  $\partial_\infty q(\zeta)$  in  $\widetilde{q(Z)}$ . Consequently, also the smaller neighborhoods  $\text{b}\bar{O}_{q(z), q(w_n), R}^{\tau_{\text{mod}}} \cap \widetilde{q(Z)}$  of  $\partial_\infty q(\zeta)$  form a neighborhood basis. Thus  $\bar{q}(\bar{z}_n) \rightarrow \partial_\infty q(\zeta)$ , a contradiction. This shows that  $\bar{q}$  is continuous at  $\partial_\infty Z$ .

The antipodality of  $\partial_\infty q$  follows from Corollary 5.23. That  $\partial_\infty q$  is a topological embedding follows, because it is injective (by antipodality),  $\partial_\infty Z$  is compact and  $\partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X$  is Hausdorff. □

We now turn to an equivariant setting and specialize the above discussion to group actions. We show that the class of groups which admit asymptotically regular actions on model spaces is restricted:

**Theorem 6.15** (from hyperbolic group) *If  $\Gamma \curvearrowright X$  is an (asymptotically) uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular undistorted isometric action of a finitely generated group on a model space, then the group  $\Gamma$  is word hyperbolic.*

**Proof** Asymptotically uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular actions are coarsely uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular (see Remark 3 on page 3855) ie their orbit maps are coarsely uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular. By assumption, they are also quasiisometric embeddings. The assertion therefore follows from Theorem 6.13. □

The boundary maps at infinity of the orbit maps induce a well-defined *boundary map*

$$\partial_\infty \Gamma \rightarrow \partial_{\tau_{\text{mod}}} X = \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$$

which is  $\Gamma$ -equivariant. Its image is the  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -limit set of  $\Gamma$  in  $\text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$ . The latter follows from the continuity of the extension with respect to the topology of flag-convergence. With Theorem 6.14 we obtain:

**Corollary 6.16** (URU implies asymptotically embedded) *If  $\Gamma \curvearrowright X$  is a uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular undistorted isometric action of a finitely generated group on a model space, then  $\Gamma$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -asymptotically embedded in the isometry group of  $X$  in the sense of [12], ie  $\Gamma$  is hyperbolic and there exists an equivariant antipodal homeomorphism  $\partial_\infty \Gamma \rightarrow \Lambda_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\Gamma) \subset \text{Flag}_{\tau_{\text{mod}}}(\partial_\infty X)$ .*

Since for symmetric spaces  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -asymptotically embedded is equivalent to  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Anosov (see [12]) we get:

**Corollary 6.17** *For a finitely generated group  $\Gamma$  and a homomorphism  $\Gamma \rightarrow G$  to a semisimple Lie group the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\rho$  is  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -Anosov.
- (ii)  $\rho$  is a uniformly  $\tau_{\text{mod}}$ -regular quasiisometric embedding.

**Proof** The direction (1)  $\implies$  (2) is proven in [12, Theorem 5.47]. The converse implication is the content of Corollary 6.17.  $\square$

## References

- [1] **W Ballmann**, *Lectures on spaces of nonpositive curvature*, DMV Seminar 25, Birkhäuser, Basel (1995) MR
- [2] **MR Bridson, A Haefliger**, *Metric spaces of non-positive curvature*, Grundle. Math. Wissen. 319, Springer (1999) MR
- [3] **D Burago, Y Burago, S Ivanov**, *A course in metric geometry*, Graduate Studies in Mathematics 33, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (2001) MR
- [4] **C Druţu, M Kapovich**, *Geometric group theory*, American Mathematical Society Colloquium Publications 63, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (2018) MR
- [5] **F Guéritaud, O Guichard, F Kassel, A Wienhard**, *Anosov representations and proper actions*, *Geom. Topol.* 21 (2017) 485–584 MR



- [6] **M Kapovich, B Leeb**, *On asymptotic cones and quasi-isometry classes of fundamental groups of 3-manifolds*, *Geom. Funct. Anal.* 5 (1995) 582–603 MR
- [7] **M Kapovich, B Leeb**, *Discrete isometry groups of symmetric spaces*, lecture notes, MSRI (2017) arXiv To appear in “Handbook of group actions”, vol. IV (L Ji, A Papadopoulos, S-T Yau, editors), International, Boston
- [8] **M Kapovich, B Leeb**, *Finsler bordifications of symmetric and certain locally symmetric spaces*, *Geom. Topol.* 22 (2018) 2533–2646 MR
- [9] **M Kapovich, B Leeb, J Millson**, *Convex functions on symmetric spaces, side lengths of polygons and the stability inequalities for weighted configurations at infinity*, *J. Differential Geom.* 81 (2009) 297–354 MR
- [10] **M Kapovich, B Leeb, J Porti**, *Morse actions of discrete groups on symmetric space*, preprint (2014) arXiv
- [11] **M Kapovich, B Leeb, J Porti**, *Some recent results on Anosov representations*, *Transform. Groups* 21 (2016) 1105–1121 MR
- [12] **M Kapovich, B Leeb, J Porti**, *Anosov subgroups: dynamical and geometric characterizations*, *Eur. J. Math.* 3 (2017) 808–898 MR
- [13] **B Kleiner, B Leeb**, *Rigidity of quasi-isometries for symmetric spaces and Euclidean buildings*, *Inst. Hautes Études Sci. Publ. Math.* 86 (1997) 115–197 MR
- [14] **U Lang, V Schroeder**, *Quasiflats in Hadamard spaces*, *Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup.* 30 (1997) 339–352 MR
- [15] **H Sultan**, *Hyperbolic quasi-geodesics in CAT(0) spaces*, *Geom. Dedicata* 169 (2014) 209–224 MR

*Department of Mathematics, University of California, Davis  
Davis, CA, United States*

*Mathematisches Institut, Universität München  
München, Germany*

*Departament de Matemàtiques, Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona  
Bellaterra, Spain*

kapovich@math.ucdavis.edu, leeb@mathematik.uni-muenchen.de,  
porti@mat.uab.cat

Proposed: Bruce Kleiner  
Seconded: Tobias H Colding, Dmitri Burago

Received: 18 February 2016  
Accepted: 11 May 2018

